

THANH THỦY

BÀI TẬP CẢ NĂM
TIẾNG ANH LỚP 10

CÓ ĐÁP ÁN

Unit 1. FAMILY LIFE - KEY

PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

cook	(v.)	nấu ăn
do the cooking	(v. phr.)	nấu ăn
do the washing-up	(v. phr.)	rửa chén bát
do the shopping	(v. phr.)	đi mua sắm
shop	(v.)	đi mua sắm
bathe the baby	(v. phr.)	tắm cho em bé
clean the house	(v. phr.)	lau dọn nhà
do the heavy lifting	(v. phr.)	làm những việc nặng
do the laundry	(v. phr.)	giặt giũ
feed the baby	(v. phr.)	cho em bé ăn
fold the clothes	(v. phr.)	gấp quần áo
iron	(v.)	là (quần áo)
lay the table	(v. phr.)	bày bàn ăn
set the table	(v. phr.)	bày bàn ăn
mop	(v.)	lau nhà (bằng cây lau nhà)
mow the lawn	(v. phr.)	cắt cỏ (bằng máy)
prepare dinner	(v. phr.)	nấu cơm tối
put away the clothes	(v. phr.)	cất quần áo
sweep the house	(v. phr.)	quét nhà
take out the rubbish	(v. phr.)	đổ rác
tidy up the house	(v. phr.)	dọn dẹp nhà cửa
water the houseplants	(v. phr.)	tưới cây cảnh (cây trồng trong nhà)
housewife	(n.)	bà nội trợ
house husband	(n. phr.)	người chồng ở nhà nội trợ (vợ đi làm)
breadwinner gia đình)	(n.)	trụ cột gia đình (người làm kiếm tiền nuôi
homemaker	(n.)	người nội trợ
homemaking	(n.)	công việc nội trợ

overworked	(adj)	làm việc quá tải
household chore	(n. phr.)	việc nhà
divide chores	(v. phr.)	phân chia công việc nhà
split chores	(v. phr.)	phân chia công việc nhà
chore equity	(n. phr.)	sự bình đẳng trong phân chia việc nhà
be responsible for the household finances	(v. phr.)	phụ trách các khoản chi tiêu trong gia đình
conflict resolution skills	(n. phr.)	kỹ năng giải quyết xung đột
marital satisfaction	(n. phr.)	sự hài lòng với cuộc sống hôn nhân

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

So sánh Hiện tại đơn và Hiện tại tiếp diễn

1. VỀ DẠNG THỨC CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ

Dạng thức của động từ ở thì hiện tại đơn và hiện tại tiếp diễn

Hiện tại đơn:

- Động từ thường (V) giữ nguyên hoặc thêm s/es tùy theo chủ ngữ.
- Động từ to be chia thành am/is hoặc are tùy theo chủ ngữ.

Hiện tại tiếp diễn:

- Động từ chia theo dạng thức am/is hoặc are + V-ing.

Ex: She often feeds her baby five times per day.

Cô ấy thường cho con ăn 5 lần một ngày.

She is feeding her baby at the moment.

Cô ấy đang cho con ăn.

2. VỀ CÁCH DÙNG

❖ Khác biệt 1

Hiện tại đơn:

Diễn tả những hành động thường xuyên xảy ra, có tính *lặp đi lặp lại*

Dấu hiệu nhận biết: các trạng từ tần suất như: never - không bao giờ, sometimes - đôi khi, often - thường xuyên, usually – thường thường, always – luôn luôn, once a week – một lần 1 tuần, ...

Hiện tại tiếp diễn:

Diễn tả hành động xảy ra *ngay tại thời điểm nói* hoặc xung quanh thời điểm nói.

Dấu hiệu nhận biết: các trạng từ thời gian: at the moment, at present, now - đều mang nghĩa là bây giờ, vào lúc này, ... và các câu mệnh lệnh: Be Quiet! - Yên lặng nào! Listen! - Nghe nào!, ...

Ex: My younger sister always does the washing-up after meals.

Em gái tôi luôn rửa bát sau mỗi bữa ăn.

My younger sister is doing the washing-up now.

Em gái tôi đang rửa bát.

❖ **Khác biệt 2**

Hiện tại đơn:

Diễn tả những *chân lý, sự thật hiển nhiên*, sự việc có tính chất *lâu dài, ổn định*

Hiện tại tiếp diễn:

Diễn tả những *xu hướng* hay những hành động, sự việc mang tính chất *tạm thời* ở hiện tại

Ex: The Moon orbits the Earth. - (Sự thật hiển nhiên)

Mặt Trăng quay quanh Trái Đất.

She works in a hospital. - (Sự việc ổn định, lâu dài)

Cô ấy làm việc trong một bệnh viện.

She is working with Chinese doctors this month. - (Sự việc tạm thời)

(Tháng này, cô ấy đang làm việc với các bác sĩ người Trung Quốc.)

❖ **Khác biệt 3**

Hiện tại đơn:

Diễn tả *lịch trình, thời gian biểu cố định*

Hiện tại tiếp diễn:

Kế hoạch trong tương lai có sự sắp xếp

Ex: The train leaves at six a.m tomorrow.

Chuyến tàu khởi hành lúc 6 giờ sáng ngày mai.

The Bakers are leaving for Paris tomorrow.

Gia đình nhà Bakers sẽ khởi hành đi Paris ngày mai.

❖ **Khác biệt 4**

Hiện tại đơn:

Diễn tả *thói quen đơn thuần* ở hiện tại

Hiện tại tiếp diễn:

Kết hợp với *always*, diễn tả sự *phản nản* về những hành động lặp lại gây khó chịu cho người khác

Ex: My father always goes to bed at 9 p.m.

Bố tôi luôn đi ngủ vào 9 giờ tối.

My father is always snoring.

Bố tôi suốt ngày ngáy.

C. CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ ĐẶC TRƯNG TRONG TỪNG THÌ

1. CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ THƯỜNG DÙNG Ở HIỆN TẠI ĐƠN

"Stative verbs" (động từ tình thái) miêu tả trạng thái hơn là một hành động cụ thể - thường được chia ở hiện tại đơn.

Các động từ tình thái bao gồm:

- Động từ chỉ sự tri nhận: feel (cảm thấy), hear (nghe thấy), see (nhìn thấy), smell (có mùi), taste (có vị) ...
- Động từ chỉ quan điểm nhận thức: agree (đồng ý), believe (tin), disagree (không đồng ý), know (biết), think (nghĩ rằng, cho rằng) ...
- Động từ chỉ sự yêu/ghét: dislike (không thích), enjoy (yêu thích), hate (ghét), like (thích), love (yêu).
- Động từ chỉ sự sở hữu: belong (thuộc về), have (có), include (bao gồm), own (sở hữu), possess (sở hữu)...
- Một số động từ khác: appear (có vẻ), need (cần), seem (có vẻ, dường như), want (muốn), wish (ước).

Ex: Mary owns an expensive car. (Đúng)

Mary is owning an expensive car. (Sai)

2. CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ THƯỜNG DÙNG Ở HIỆN TẠI TIẾP DIỄN

Các động từ thể hiện sự thay đổi hay xu hướng thì thường được dùng ở thì hiện tại tiếp diễn: get (trở nên), fall (giảm), grow (tăng, phát triển), begin (bắt đầu), change (thay đổi), become (trở nên), improve (cải thiện, tiến bộ), increase (tăng)

Ex: Bill is getting taller this year.

Năm nay Bill đang dần cao hơn.

Demands for Christmas gifts are growing.

Nhu cầu mua quà Giáng Sinh đang tăng.

3. CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ DÙNG ĐƯỢC Ở CẢ 2 THÌ NHƯNG MANG Ý NGHĨA KHÁC NHAU

❖ taste

The soup tastes good.

Món canh này có vị ngon đấy.

I am tasting the soup.

Tớ đang nếm món canh này.

❖ look

They look happy together.

Họ trông thật hạnh phúc bên nhau.

Why are you looking at me?

Tại sao cậu lại nhìn tớ thế?

❖ weigh

The oranges weigh a kilo.
Những quả cam này nặng 1 cân.

❖ **enjoy**

Kate enjoys parties.
Kate thích tiệc tùng.

❖ **see**

I see your point.
Tớ hiểu ý cậu.

cũ.

❖ **have**

Laura has a big house.
Laura có một ngôi nhà lớn.

❖ **think**

I think you're right.
Tớ nghĩ rằng cậu đã đúng.

❖ **consider**

I consider you my friend.
Tớ xem cậu là bạn.

She is weighing these oranges.
Cô ấy đang cân những quả cam.

Kate is enjoying the party.
Kate đang tận hưởng bữa tiệc.

I am seeing an old friend.
Tớ chuẩn bị đi gặp một người bạn

Laura is having dinner.
Laura đang ăn tối.

What are you thinking about?
Bạn đang suy nghĩ về điều gì vậy?

I am considering your advice.
Tớ đang suy nghĩ về lời khuyên của

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

1. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>r</u> esponsible | B. h <u>o</u> memaker | C. m <u>o</u> w | D. <u>o</u> verworked |
| 2. A. b <u>a</u> the | B. f <u>i</u> nance | C. p <u>o</u> gram | D. c <u>a</u> t |
| 3. A. l <u>i</u> fting | B. r <u>o</u> ut <u>i</u> ne | C. s <u>p</u> lit | D. d <u>i</u> vide |
| 4. A. cl <u>o</u> thes | B. f <u>o</u> ld | C. g <u>o</u> ceries | D. <u>i</u> ron |
| 5. A. d <u>u</u> ty | B. cl <u>u</u> sters | C. r <u>u</u> bbish | D. wash <u>u</u> p |

II. Pick out the word whose stress pattern is different from that of the others. Circle A, B, C or D.

- | | | | |
|---|--|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>P</u> ri <u>v</u> ate | B. P <u>r</u> o <u>v</u> ide | C. A <u>r</u> ra <u>n</u> ge | D. A <u>d</u> vis <u>e</u> |
| 2. A. <u>R</u> es <u>u</u> rf <u>a</u> ce | B. K <u>n</u> ow <u>l</u> ed <u>g</u> e | C. T <u>e</u> ch <u>n</u> ic <u>a</u> l | D. E <u>x</u> po <u>r</u> t |
| 3. A. M <u>e</u> d <u>i</u> cal | B. E <u>n</u> ta <u>i</u> n <u>m</u> en <u>t</u> | C. A <u>t</u> mo <u>s</u> ph <u>e</u> re | D. S <u>u</u> bu <u>r</u> bu |
| 4. A. R <u>e</u> c <u>i</u> pe | B. C <u>i</u> ne <u>m</u> a | C. S <u>i</u> ma <u>r</u> | D. E <u>x</u> pe <u>r</u> tise |

5. A. Indicate B. Forefinger C. Procedure D. Enemy

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

1. Match the two columns to make correct phrases.

- | | | |
|----------|---|----------------------|
| 1. set | e | a. the floor |
| 2. mop | a | b. the houseplants |
| 3. feed | d | c. the heavy lifting |
| 4. water | b | d. the baby |
| 5. do | c | e. the table |

II. Choose the odd one out.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. satisfaction | B. household chore | C. breadwinner | D. financial |
| 2. A. mop | B. lawn | C. equity | D. resolution |
| 3. A. split | B. bathe | C. overworked | D. tidy |
| 4. A. housekeeper | B. housewife | C. houseplant | D. homemaker |
| 5. A. conflict | B. marital | C. chore | D. finance |

III. Choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

1. My mother is ____ for taking care of the home and the family.
A. responsible B. takes the responsibility C. take the duty D. Both B & C are correct.
2. Women usually manage ____ better than men do.
A. household finances B. household machines C. housewives D. houseplants
3. My parents _____. My mother usually does more housework than my father.
A. divide chores equally B. split chores unequally
C. don't share housework equally D. Both B & C are correct.
4. Equal share of household duties helps increase _____.
A. job satisfaction B. couple satisfaction C. wedding satisfaction D. marital satisfaction
5. It's not easy to gain _____ between husbands and wives, even in developed countries.
A. equal chore B. chore equally C. chore equal D. chore equity
6. He decided that he wanted to be a _____ while his wife worked full-time.
A. homemaker B. house husband C. housewife D. Both A & B are correct
7. Negotiation and conflict _____ skills are very important to every woman in modern life.

A. resolution

B. revolution

C. renovation

D. communication

8. My sunflower seeds must be ____ twice a day so that they will sprout in a few days.

A. watered

B. dried

C. picked

D. spread

IV. Complete the following sentences using the given phrases. There are two phrases that you don't need.

bathing the baby

mop the house

folding the clothes

watering the houseplants

doing the laundry

doing the shopping

take out the garbage

doing the cooking

feeding the cats

do the washing-up

1. My mother is not _____ **doing the cooking** _____ because we are eating out today.

2. My grandfather is not _____ **doing the shopping** _____. He'd better stay home since he's sick.

3. She is visiting her grandparents in the countryside tomorrow, so she is _____ **folding the clothes** _____ and packing her stuff.

4. It's wet in the living room. My brother is _____ **watering the houseplants** _____.

5. Susan would like to have a washing machine. She's tired of _____ **doing the laundry** _____ every day.

6. Sometimes, guests are expected to help _____ **do the washing-up** _____ after parties.

7. It smells awful in the kitchen. Don't you _____ **take out the garbage** _____?

8. It's dirty in your house. Why don't you _____ **mop the house** _____?

V. Choose the best options to complete the following sentences.

1. As a homemaker, _____.

A. she does a lot of online jobs at home to earn money

B. she spends most of her time taking care of her family

C. she doesn't have time to look after her children

2. She is overworked, _____.

A. so she doesn't earn enough money to support her family

B. so she doesn't have time to take care of her home

C. so she spends a lot of time with her children

3. Sweetie, get yourself prepared for dinner. _____.

A. You are cooking dinner today.

B. You should help me cook dinner.

C. Wash your hands carefully before eating.

4. Let's lay the table. ____.

A. It's time for lunch.

B. We should call to reserve a table.

C. We should do the washing-up before we leave.

5. Look! It's raining. Hurry and ____.

A. put away the clothes

B. fold the clothes

C. iron the clothes

6. As the breadwinner of the family, ____.

A. Sarah quitted her job to take care of her home

B. Sarah works hard to support her family

C. Sarah stays at home to educate her children

7. There is chore equity in Mr. and Mrs. Brown's family. ____.

A. They share the equal amount of housework.

B. Mr. Brown is the breadwinner and Mrs. Brown is the homemaker.

C. Mrs. Brown does more housework than Mr. Brown.

8. Husbands should help do the heavy lifting such as ____.

A. helping the children with Math problems.

B. repairing the roof of the house

C. cooking and watering houseplants

VI. Choose the right words to the pictures.

feed the cat

do the shopping

lay the table

cook

bathe the baby

do the washing-up



1. ____ **cook** ____



2. ____ **do the shopping** ____



3. ____ **feed the cat** ____



4. ___ do the washing-up



5. ___ lay the table



6. ___ bathe the baby

VII. Choose the sentence that best describes the picture.



1. A. Bathing a newborn baby is never an easy task as it requires skill and experience.

B. Mrs. Laura and her ten-year-old daughter go to the swimming pool every day.

C. Shaking a baby is believed to have bad impacts on his/her development.



2. A. The man is taking out the rubbish.

B. Rubbish should be thrown away every day or it may cause awful smell.

C. The child is setting the table for dinner.



3. A. The girl is ironing her clothes.

B. Clothes are being folded neatly.

C. Susan is putting clothes in an airing cupboard.



4. A. Mopping the garden path is David's favourite activity.

B. Though David has a lot of spare time, he hardly helps his parents do the gardening.

C. At the weekend, David usually helps his grandmother mow the lawn.



5. A. Many children are too lazy to help their parents with housework.

B. The girl is doing some cleaning with her mother.

C. The girl is doing the cooking while her mother is sweeping the kitchen floor.

VIII. Choose the correct options to complete the following sentences.

1. They ____ rugby twice a week.

A. play

B. are playing

2. ____ breakfast every morning?

A. Are you having

B. Do you have

3. It ____, so they have to cancel the horse race today.

A. rains

B. is raining

4. Our tour guide ____ three languages.

A. speaks

B. is speaking

5. We ____ the way. I wish we brought a map.

A. don't know

B. aren't knowing

6. Listen! The DJ ____ my favourite song.

A. plays

B. is playing

7. ____ the food at this restaurant?

A. Do you like

B. Are you liking

8. I ____, I ____.

A. am not laughing - am crying

B. don't laugh - cry

IX. Complete the sentences using the Present Simple or the Present Continuous.

1. I (leave) ____ **leave** ____ home at 7 o'clock every morning.

2. She (work) ____ **works** ____ in the Sales Department in London, but at the moment she (do) ____ **is doing** ____ a training course in Bristol.

3. Linda (clean) ____ **cleans** ____ her house every weekend.

4. He (try) ____ **tries** ____ very hard in every game that he (play) ____ **plays** ____.

5. Excuse me. I think that you (sit) ____ **are sitting** ____ in my seat.

6. (you, listen) ____ **Do you listen** ____ to the radio very often?

7. Don't talk to me now. I (write) ____ **am writing** ____ an important letter.

8. Why (they, drive) ____ **do they drive** ____ on the left in Britain?

9. It usually (rain) **rains** here a lot, but it (not rain) **is not raining** now.
10. What are you doing? - I (bake) **am baking** a cake at the moment.

X. Decide whether the following sentences are correct or incorrect.

1. He's having a bath at the moment.
 ☒ A. Correct ☐ B. Incorrect
2. He's hating doing the heavy lifting.
 ☐ A. Correct ☒ B. Incorrect
3. My roommate and I always share the housework equally.
 ☒ A. Correct ☐ B. Incorrect
4. Jenny usually eats out because she is not knowing how to cook.
 ☐ A. Correct ☒ B. Incorrect
5. I usually do the laundry, but I'm sick today so my brother does it.
 ☐ A. Correct ☒ B. Incorrect
6. She's believing that men have to do housework as well.
 ☐ A. Correct ☒ B. Incorrect
7. We are painting the living room for Christmas. It's really hard work.
 ☒ A. Correct ☐ B. Incorrect
8. We get up at seven every morning, and then we are having coffee and a small breakfast.
 ☐ A. Correct ☒ B. Incorrect
9. Sometimes I am watching American films on TV, but I'm not understanding the words.
 ☐ A. Correct ☒ B. Incorrect
10. You do not eat much today. Are you ill?
 ☐ A. Correct ☒ B. Incorrect

XI. Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs given. Use negative form if necessary. You can use a word twice.

have take out take split prepare shop do

1. I usually **take** the bus to school, but this morning I'm walking.
2. My mom is not at home. She **is shopping** for groceries now.
3. I'm very busy, so I only **do** the laundry every Saturday morning.
4. They **do not split** housework among members in Ann's family. She has to do all the chores.
5. Kate always **has** her dog fed by her neighbor every time she goes on business trips.

6. I always cook, but today is Women's Day, so my husband is preparing dinner in the kitchen.

7. The residents in my neighborhood take out the garbage at 5 p.m. every day when the bin lorry comes.

8. Mary's wrist was broken once, so now she rarely does the heavy lifting.

XII. Find ONE mistake in each sentence and fill in the blank with the correct word(s).

1. As a single mom, she have to be both the homemaker and the breadwinner.

has

2. My younger brother is unhappy that he makes the washing-up by himself.

does

3. My mom is busy today, so I prepare the meal for the whole family.

am
preparing

4. My father drives me to school every morning, but this week I go by bus.

am
going

5. Typically, the elderly is sent to a nursing home if they cannot take care of themselves.

are

XIII. Choose the correct options to complete the following sentences.

1. Why are you always crying over spilt milk? I am tired of what you say.

A. are - crying

B. do – cry

C. do - drink

2. We are all in the garden for the monthly family gathering. I am preparing some omelets and eel soup for the whole family. They keep us healthy.

A. are keeping

B. keep

C. will

3. Look! That girl is very attractive. - Yeah, she reminds me of an old friend of mine.

A. reminds

B. is reminding

C. will remind

4. What do you mean? - Nothing. I am just trying to say that Laura won't be available this Sunday.

A. are - meaning

B. do – mean

C. are - meant

5. I will go to Frankfurt tomorrow. What time do the train from Berlin leave?

- A. will – leave B. is - leaving C. does – leave
6. Which one do you prefer: the red or the black car? – I ____ the red car looks better.
A. am thinking B. think C. thought
7. Felix is very rich. He ____ a Mercedes.
A. is driving B. drives C. just drove
8. Only when he ____ truly sorry can I accept his apology.
A. feels B. is feeling C. will feel
9. Would you like some soup? - Wow. It ____ good. Can you get me some? Thanks.
A. is smelling B. is tasting C. smells
10. Will you accompany me to the graduation prom next Friday? - Yes, if nothing comes up. I ____.
A. am promising B. will promise C. promise

XIV. Complete the sentences using the Present simple or the Present Continuous.

1. The children must be in bed now. They (not watch) ____ **are not watching** ____ TV because they are too tired.
2. Hi Betty. For what are you calling me now at 2 a.m.? - I (need) ____ **need** ____ your help now.
3. (you, have) ____ **Do you have** ____ a map with you now?
4. Do you have a minute? - Sorry. I (not have) ____ **do not have** ____ time now.
5. In case someone (call) ____ **calls** ____, tell them I am not home.

C. READING

1. Read the passage and do the tasks below.

While couples without a clear or equal chore division may encounter quarrels over who does what, a recent survey finds the divorce rate among couples sharing chores equally is about fifty percent higher than those in which wives do more or most of the housework, which can be a slap in the face for gender equality.

The researchers explain that modern couples organize their marriage and work out the tasks and duties, which may gradually turn their marriage into a business or contractual relationship. The woman may gradually feel less needed or happy and what's worse is that no one would care to help if something is not among their assigned chores. That seems to encourage conflicts rather than conflict resolution skills.

On the contrary, in families without equal task division women tend to be responsible for more chores than men. While they believe they can exchange their roles for their husbands', many women believe they are most naturally suited for certain tasks. They simply enjoy being

involved in their children's activities, which means more chores for them. This group of women also report more marital satisfaction.

The survey also aimed to find out whether women's were happier if men shared more of the burden. In fact, they find that men report fewer family conflicts and greater well-being while women appear to be largely unmoved. This may be partly because **they** feel less guilty or simply learn how to have a quiet life.

Part 1. Choose no more than THREE WORDS from the reading text that have the same meaning as the given definition to fill in each blank.

1. process or result of dividing household responsibilities - _____ **chore division** _____
2. view that requires the same rights, benefits, etc. regardless of sexes - _____ **gender equality** _____
3. tie or bond between people who agree on certain conditions - _____ **contractual relationship** _____
4. ability to solve one's conflicts with other people - _____ **conflict resolution skills** _____
5. subjective evaluation of how satisfied people are in their marriage - _____ **marital satisfaction** _____
6. general health and happiness - _____ **well-being** _____

Part 2. Choose the best answers for the following questions.

1. What is the best title for the above reading text?
 - A. The divorce rate among modern families
 - B. Factors that cause conflicts between husbands and wives
 - C. The share of chores and marital happiness
2. What may turn marriage into a contractual relationship?
 - A. Too much housework
 - B. The way couples organize their families and the clear-cut chore division
 - C. Task and duties that are unclearly assigned
3. What does it mean by "unmoved"?
 - A. happy
 - B. disappointed
 - C. unshaken
4. How do men feel when they do more housework than before?
 - A. Happier
 - B. Sympathetic towards women
 - C. Reluctant
5. What can be inferred from the reading text?
 - A. Chores themselves do not affect one's marital satisfaction.
 - B. Household chores should be done by women.

C. There should be equality in everything to gain marital happiness.

6. What does the word "they" in the fourth paragraph mean?

A. Women

B. Men

C. Women & men

Part 3. Decide whether the following statements are True (T), False (F) or Not Given (NG).

T F NG

1. There is an increasing divorce rate among couples in families with unequal chore division. **NG**

2. Couples in families with equal housework division know how best to solve conflicts. **F**

3. Women in families without equal task division believe they can do things that men do. **T**

4. Most of the women who do more household chores have husbands working full-time. **NG**

II. Choose the TRUE sentences according to the given statements.

1. I meet Alex at seven on Thursdays.

A. Alex and I make an arrangement at seven this Thursday.

B. I meet Alex every Thursday.

C. I don't meet Alex on all the days of the week but Thursday.

2. John's being weird today.

A. Today John is not himself.

B. John is always weird.

C. We do not like

John today.

3. Do you smoke?

A. Is smoking one of your habits?

B. I see that you are smoking.

C. Don't you know I hate smoke?

4. Little Andy's fourth birthday party is starting at 6 p.m. tonight.

A. Andy's birthday party always starts at 6 p.m. every year.

B. Andy's birthday party is set to be at 6 p.m. tonight.

C. Andy's parents are those who decide on the time of his birthday party.

5. I hate living in England since it rains all day.

A. It is raining in England at the moment.

B. It is going to rain for many days in England.

C. As far as I'm concerned, it rains a lot in England.

III. Choose the best answer to fill in the blank.

Today computers come ____ (1) all shapes and sizes. There were still big computers for companies or universities. There are other special computers for factories. These large computers tell the factory machines ____ (2) to do. But there are also small ____ (3) computers to use at home or in an office. There are even computers in telephones, television ____ (4), and cars. These computers have to be small. They are so small that you cannot ____ (5) see all their parts.

Computers are very useful, but they also can ____ (6) problems. One kind of problems is with the computer's memory. It is not perfect so sometimes computers ____ (7) important information. Another problem is with the machinery. Computers are machines, and machines can break down. When the computers break down, they may ____ (8) information, ____ (9) chalk on a blackboard. Or they may stop doing anything at all. And there is ____ (10) different kind of problem with computers. Some doctors say they may be bad for your health. They say you should not work with computers all day.

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. A. at | B. in | C. under | D. with |
| 2. A. everything | B. something | C. what | D. thing |
| 3. A. personal | B. private | C. individual | D. owner's |
| 4. A. pictures | B. outfits | C. boxes | D. sets |
| 5. A. even | B. still | C. at all | D. almost |
| 6. A. get | B. cause | C. suffer | D. gain |
| 7. A. lose | B. miss | C. misplace | D. misunderstand |
| 8. A. clean | B. erase | C. wipe | D. scrape |
| 9. A. as | B. like | C. such as | D. for instance |
| 10. A. yet | B. other | C. more | D. another |

IV. Choose the sentence which is closest in meaning with the given one.

1. It rained during the match, but we enjoyed it all the same.

A. It rained during the match and we did not enjoy the match.

B. It rained during the match and we enjoyed it less.

C. It rained during the match and we enjoyed it in the same way as others.

D. It rained during the match but we enjoyed it.

2. Donald could not help weeping when he heard the bad news.
 - A. Donald could not stop himself from weeping at the bad news.
 - B. Donald could not allow himself to sweep at the bad news.
 - C. Donald could not help himself and so he wept.
 - D. Donald could not help himself because he was weeping.
3. "When I met my long-lost brother, I was at a loss for words."
 - A. When the speaker met his brother, he was puzzled about what to say.
 - B. When the speaker met his brother, he had much to say.
 - C. When the speaker met his brother, he refused to say anything.
 - D. When the speaker met his brother, he had nothing pleasant to say.
4. It's a pity that you didn't tell us about this.
 - A. I wish you told us about this.
 - B. I wish you would tell us about this.
 - C. I wish you had told us about this.
 - D. I wish you have told us about this.
5. Without transportation, our modern society could not exist.
 - A. Our modern society could not exist if there is no transportation.
 - B. Our modern society will not exist without having traffic.
 - C. If there were no transportation, our society would not exist.
 - D. If transportation no longer exists, our society will not either.
6. The newspaper has a circulation of five million.
 - A. The paper is five million years old.
 - B. Five million people read the newspaper.
 - C. Five million newspaper are put in a circle.
 - D. The newspaper is round in shape.
7. No sooner had they found her number than they called her.
 - A. They called her as soon as they found her number.
 - B. They found her number sooner or later.
 - C. They called her number sooner or later.
 - D. They found her number as soon as they called her.
8. He got over his illness in three months.
 - A. It took to get over his illness in three months.
 - B. It took three months for him to get over his illness.

C. It took him three months to get over his illness.

D. It took three months for his illness to get over.

9. Though he tried hard, he didn't succeed.

A. However hard he tried, he didn't succeed.

B. However he tried hard, he didn't

C. However he didn't succeed, he tried hard.
didn't succeed.

D. However he tried hard but he

10. Joe still likes Madonna.

A. Joe was a fan of Madonna's for years.
for years.

B. Joe has been a fan of Madonna's

C. Joe used to like Madonna years ago.

D. Joe is being a fan of Madonna.

D. WRITING

I. Use the given words to write sentences in present simple or present continuous tense.

Remember to capitalize the initial letter of each sentence.

1. She/ only/ know/ three/ word/ Italy.

She only knows three words in Italian.

2. I/ usually/ walk,/ but/ I/ travel/ bus/ this week.

I usually walk, but I am travelling by bus this week.

3. The sun/ shine. Let/ do/ laundry.

The sun is shining. Let's do the laundry.

4. Vietnam/ an extended family/ usually consist/ three or four/ generations.

In Vietnam, an extended family usually consists of three or four generations.

5. Every day/ I/ leave/ my flat/ eight/ walk/ my university.

Every day I leave my flat at eight and walk to my university.

II. Write a paragraph about doing household chores.

Nowadays when the society develops day by day, people have no time in doing chores, especially women. Not only do they have full-time of job, but they also take care of children and do the housework. In my opinion, family members should share housework together. One reason is that sharing housework can connect family members. Adult members do labors like laundry and cooking, children just do simple chores like watering garden or making their bed. Sharing housework makes us feel less tired and equal. Another reason is that doing housework brings knowledge organization of things, especially children. They will know how to keep their belongings tidied and everything kept

clean as well. In addition, we will feel responsible for our family. In conclusion, we should share housework to improve family life.

III. Rewrite the following sentences without changing their meaning, using the given words.

1. It's a long time since he last called me.
He hasn't _____ **called me for a long time** _____
2. When did he get the job?
How long ago _____ **did he get the job** _____
3. I advise you to book a table in advance.
If I _____ **were you, I would book a table in advance** _____
4. I don't want to tell them the secret.
I would rather _____ **not tell them the secret** _____
5. If I improved my English speaking skill, I would easily get that job.
Were _____ **I to improve my English speaking skill, I would easily get that job** _____
6. We wanted to get good seats so we arrived early.
In order _____ **to get good seats, we arrived early** _____
7. It took her nearly an hour to do the crossword.
She spent _____ **nearly an hour doing the crossword** _____
8. The policeman made him confess after three days.
He was _____ **made the confess after three days** _____
9. Nga finds Maths easier than Physics.
Physics is not _____ **as easy as Maths for Nga** _____
10. I advise you to see a doctor.
You ought _____ **to see a doctor** _____

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. T <u>a</u> mil | B. Isl <u>a</u> m | C. r <u>e</u> action | D. g <u>a</u> ther |
| 2. A. <u>o</u> fficial | B. m <u>o</u> sque | C. <u>o</u> ptional | D. t <u>r</u> opical |
| 3. A. coll <u>e</u> ction | B. n <u>e</u> cessary | C. <u>e</u> xplanation | D. r <u>e</u> putation |
| 4. A. cas <u>u</u> al | B. occa <u>s</u> ion | C. im <u>p</u> ression | D. usu <u>a</u> lly |
| 5. A. compul <u>s</u> ory | B. adu <u>l</u> t | C. pu <u>b</u> lish | D. camp <u>u</u> s |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. deny | B. remote | C. income | D. unique |
| 2. A. nature | B. subject | C. scenery | D. tuition |
| 3. A. admire | B. Internet | C. violent | D. website |
| 4. A. government | B. linguistics | C. territory | D. journalism |
| 5. A. mausoleum | B. vegetarian | C. intermediate | D. informative |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose the best answer from the four options marked A, B, C or D to complete each sentence below.

1. If Hoa ____ rich, she would travel around the world.
A. is B. was C. were D. been
2. Ba ____ a new bicycle recently.
A. bought B. buying C. buy D. has bought
3. Nam ____ speaks Chinese but also speaks Japanese.
A. not only B. so C. only D. can
4. It is raining very hard, ____ we can't go camping.
A. so B. so that C. more over D. however
5. Mrs. Hoa ____ sings very well is Nam's mother.
A. which B. whom C. who D. where
6. Hung enjoys ____ fishing and boating.
A. to go B. go C. going D. went
7. We must finish our project ____.
A. on time B. in time C. yesterday D. time
8. ____ a kind of everlasting energy, solar energy may be the solution to our crisis.
A. Because B. Since C. As D. With
9. Students ____ universities may have many difficulties in finding good study methods.
A. enter B. entering C. that enter D. who enter
10. ____ tired, I went to bed early.
A. To feel B. Felt C. Feeling D. Having
11. Either John or his brothers ____ the money.
A. has stolen B. have stolen C. has been stolen D. have been stolen
12. My dog as well as my cats ____ twice a day.

- A. eat B. eats C. has eaten D. have eaten
13. Do it right now, ____?
- A. do you B. aren't you C. will you D. don't you
14. The teacher advised the children ____ and see the dentist regularly.
- A. went B. going C. go D. to go
15. I wish you ____ to the theater last night, but you didn't.
- A. would come B. had come C. was coming D. came

II. Choose the underlined words or phrases (A, B, C or D) that are incorrect in standard English.

1. My father prefers watching films at home than going to the cinema.
A B C D
2. Women nowadays have more free to participate in social activities.
A B C D
3. She had the gardener to plant some trees.
A B C D
4. The church where we are going to visit isn't far from here.
A B C D
5. Come up to my place and we will discuss it.
A B C D

III. Give the correct form of the words in CAPITAL to complete the sentences.

1. He treated them with _____ **generosity** _____. (GENEROUS)
2. There are many people living in _____ **poverty** _____ now in the world. (POOR)
3. My new car is more _____ **economical** _____ than the one I had before. (ECONOMY)
4. How many _____ **competitors** _____ entered the race? (COMPETE)
5. Housework has _____ **traditionally** _____ been regarded as women's work. (TRADITION)

IV. Give the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. I was tired when I got home. I (work) _____ **had been working** _____ all day.
2. I want to get married, but I (not meet) _____ **haven't met** _____ the right person yet.
3. Why John (not/ want) _____ **didn't John want** _____ to play soccer last Sunday?
4. The astronaut's clothes (make) _____ **are made** _____ from special materials.
5. We would have caught the last bus if we (leave) _____ **had left** _____ the cinema five minutes earlier.

C. READING

I. Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase for each of the blanks.

The popular image of student life is of young people with few responsibilities enjoying themselves and (1) _____ very little work. This is often not true. Many older people now study at college or university, sometimes (2) _____ a part-time basis while having a job and looking after a family. These students are often (3) _____ motivated and work very hard.

Younger students are often thought to be lazy and careless about money but this (4) _____ is changing. In Britain reduced government support for higher education means that students can no longer rely on having their expenses (5) _____ for them. Formerly, students received a grant towards their living expenses. Now most can only get a loan (6) _____ has to be paid back. Since 1999 they have paid over £1 000 towards tuition (7) _____ and this amount will increase up to a maximum of £3 000. In the US students already (8) _____ pay for tuition and room and board. Many get a financial aid package which may (9) _____ grants, scholarships and loans. The fear of having large debts places (10) _____ pressure on students and many take part-time jobs during the term and work full-time in the vacations.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. producing | B. carrying | C. doing | D. making |
| 2. A. for | B. with | C. on | D. at |
| 3. A. highly | B. mainly | C. absolutely | D. adequately |
| 4. A. position | B. state | C. situation | D. condition |
| 5. A. paying | B. paid | C. pay | D. to pay |
| 6. A. whether | B. what | C. which | D. who |
| 7. A. money | B. fees | C. allowances | D. charge |
| 8. A. had better | B. should | C. may | D. have to |
| 9. A. include | B. consist | C. compose | D. belong |
| 10. A. large | B. generous | C. considerate | D. considerable |

II. Fill in each of the numbered blanks with ONE suitable word to complete the following passages.

For more than six million American children, coming home after school means coming back to an empty house. Some deal with the situation by (1) **watching** TV. Some may hide. But all of them have something in (2) **common**. They spend part of each day alone. They are called “latchkey children”. They are children who (3) **look** after themselves while their parents work. And their bad condition has become a subject of concern.

Lynette Long was once the principal of an elementary school. She said, “We had a school rule against (4) **wearing** jewelry. A lot of kids had chains around their necks with

keys attached. I was constantly telling them (5) _____ **to** _____ put the keys inside shirts. There were so many keys; it never came to my mind what they meant.” Slowly, she learned (6) _____ **that** _____ they were house keys.

She and her husband began (7) _____ **talking** _____ to the children who had keys. They learned of the effect working couples and single parents were having on their children. Fear was the biggest problem faced by children at home alone. One in three latchkey children the Longs talked to reported being frightened. Many had nightmares and were worried (8) _____ **about** _____ their own safety.

The most common way latchkey children deal with their fears (9) _____ **is** _____ by hiding. They may hide in a shower stall, under a bed or in a closet. The second is TV. They often (10) _____ **turn** _____ the volume up. It's hard to get statistics on latchkey children, the Longs have learned. Most parents are slow to admit that they leave their children alone.

III. Read the following passage on transport, and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Most journeys in Britain and the US are made by road. Some of these are made on public transport but most are by private car.

In Britain many people rely on their cars for daily local activities, e.g. getting to work, doing the shopping, and visiting friends. People living in urban areas may use buses, trains or, in London, the Underground, to get to city centers, mainly because traffic is often heavy and it is difficult to find anywhere to park a car. Some places in the country may have a bus only two or three times a week so people living there have no choice but to rely on their cars.

In the US, large cities have good public transportation systems. The El railroad in Chicago and the underground systems of New York, Boston, San Francisco and Washington, DC are heavily used. Elsewhere, most Americans prefer to use their cars. Families often have two cars and, outside major cities, have to drive fairly long distances to schools, offices, shops, banks, etc. Many college and even high-school students have their own cars.

Long-distance travel in Britain is also mainly by road, though railways link most towns and cities. Most places are linked by motorways or other fast roads and many people prefer to drive at their own convenience rather than use a train, even though they may get stuck in a traffic jam. Long-distance coach/bus services are usually a cheaper alternative to trains, but they take longer and may be less comfortable. Some long distance travel, especially that undertaken for business reasons, may be by air. There are regular flights between regional airports, as well as to and from London. A lot of freight is also distributed by road, though heavier items and raw materials often go by rail.

In the US much long-distance travel is by air. America has two main long-distance bus companies, Greyhound and Trailways. Amtrak, the national network, provides rail services for passengers. Private railway companies such as Union Pacific now carry only freight, though in fact over 70% of freight goes by road.

The main problems associated with road transport in both Britain and the US are traffic congestion and pollution. It is predicted that the number of cars on British roads will increase by a third within a few years, making both these problems worse. The British government would like more people to use public transport, but so far they have had little success in persuading people to give up their cars or to share rides with neighbors. Most people say that public transport is simply not good enough. Americans too have resisted government requests to share cars because it is less convenient and restricts their freedom. Petrol/gasoline is relatively cheap in the US and outside the major cities public transport is bad, so they see no reason to use their cars less.

1. In Britain and the US most people travel by _____.
A. road B. rail C. air D. sea
2. According to the passage, people in London may prefer the Underground to their own cars due to _____.
A. long distances B. heavy traffic C. air pollution D. cheap tickets
3. It is mentioned in paragraph 3 that the public transportation systems in the US are good in _____.
A. some states B. large cities C. all cities D. large states
4. Which of the following is NOT true according to the passage?
A. Few college students in the US have their own cars.
B. Families in the US often have more than one car.
C. Most Americans prefer to drive their cars outside large cities.
D. The underground systems are popular in some major US cities.
5. The phrase “at their own convenience” in paragraph 4 is closest in meaning to _____.
A. at the latest time and nearest place B. at the fastest time and nearest place
C. at an appropriate time and place D. at an early time and nearby place
6. Which of the following is true about transport in Britain?
A. Trains are usually cheaper than long-distance coach services.
B. There are no regular flights between regional airports.
C. Heavier items and raw materials are often transported by train.

- D. Long-distance travel in Britain is only by road.
7. According to the information in paragraph 5, long-distance travellers in the US can choose from ____ mode(s) of transport.
- A. four B. three C. two D. one
8. It is stated in the passage that the major problems of road transport in Britain and the US are ____.
- A. accidents and pollution B. speeding and bad roads
C. drink-driving and traffic jams D. traffic jams and pollution
9. According to the passage, people in Britain refuse public transport because ____.
- A. they see no reason to use their cars less B. petrol is relatively cheap in Britain
C. they like to share rides with neighbors D. they think it is not good enough
10. The word “they” in the last sentence of the passage can best be replaced by ____.
- A. neighbors B. major cities C. the government D. Americans

D. WRITING

I. Write the sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the original one.

- I now regret spending too much money on clothes.
→ I wish _____ **I hadn't spent too much money on clothes** _____
- People say football is the best game to play.
→ Football _____ **is said to be the best game to play** _____
- “It was nice of you to help me. Thank you very much” Tom said to you.
→ Tom thanked _____ **me for helping him** _____
- It takes three hours to drive from Hai Phong to Ha Noi.
→ It is a _____ **three-hour drive from Hai Phong to Ha Noi** _____
- John has never been so rude to anybody.
→ Never _____ **before has John been so rude to anybody** _____

II. Reorder the following sets of words to make meaningful sentences.

- air/ am/ that/ afraid/ the/ city/ pollution/ in/ our/ getting/ worse/ and/ is/ worse/ I/.
I am afraid that the air pollution in our city is getting worse and worse.
- the/ way/ Internet/ we/ as/ can/ for/ use/ an/ effective/ self-study/.
We can use the Internet as an effective way for self-study.
- shouldn't/ river/ we/ is/ swim/in/ because/ this/ water/ polluted/ highly/ its/.
We shouldn't swim in this river because its water is highly polluted.

4. in/ relax / there/ much / noise / was/ time/ to/ no / so / there/ and/ traffic/ city/ the/ was / and/.

In the city there was so much traffic and noise and there was no time to relax.

5. leave/ now/ train/ miss/ unless/ I / the / will / I/.

I will miss the train unless I leave now.

Unit 2. YOUR BODY AND YOU - KEY

PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. VOCABULARY

bone	(n.)	xương
brain	(n.)	não bộ
brain cell	(n. phr.)	tế bào não
lung	(n.)	lá phổi
skin	(n.)	da, làn da
stomach	(n.)	dạ dày
stress	(n.)	áp lực
treatment	(n.)	sự điều trị
prevent	(v.)	ngăn ngừa, phòng ngừa
boost	(v.)	thúc đẩy
head massage	(n. phr.)	bóp đầu, mát xa đầu
health care	(n.)	dịch vụ y tế, chăm sóc sức khoẻ
side effect	(n.)	tác dụng phụ
sleepiness	(n.)	tình trạng buồn ngủ, thèm ngủ
sleeplessness	(n.)	sự mất ngủ
bad breath	(n.)	chứng hôi miệng
calorie need	(n. phr.)	nhu cầu calo
food pyramid	(n. phr.)	tháp dinh dưỡng
allergy	(n.)	sự dị ứng
blood vessel	(n.)	mạch máu
balance between yin and yang	(n. phr.)	sự cân bằng âm dương
harmony	(n.)	sự hoà hợp

sugary drink	(n. phr.)	nước ngọt
whole grains	(n. phr.)	ngũ cốc nguyên hạt
acupuncture	(n.)	châm cứu
alternative treatment	(n. phr.)	phương pháp chữa trị thay thế
bacterium	(n.)	vi khuẩn
disorder	(n.)	rối loạn
nerve	(n.)	dây thần kinh
precaution	(n.)	khuyến cáo, lưu ý
therapy	(n.)	liệu pháp, trị liệu
health practice	(n.)	cách chữa bệnh, tập tục chữa bệnh
health belief	(n.)	niềm tin về sức khoẻ
circulatory system	(n. phr.)	hệ tuần hoàn
digestive system	(n. phr.)	hệ tiêu hoá
immune system	(n. phr.)	hệ miễn dịch
respiratory system	(n. phr.)	hệ hô hấp
skeletal system	(n. phr.)	hệ xương
resistance	(n.)	sức đề kháng, sức bền
pump	(v.)	bơm
skeleton	(n.)	bộ xương
skull	(n.)	xương sọ, hộp sọ
spine	(n.)	xương sống
intestine	(n.)	ruột
acupoint	(n.)	huyệt châm cứu
acupressure	(n.)	bấm huyệt
ailment	(n.)	bệnh nhẹ
aromatherapy	(n.)	liệu pháp chữa bệnh bằng dầu thơm

II. GRAMMAR

A. TƯƠNG LAI ĐƠN VÀ TƯƠNG LAI GẦN

SO SÁNH "WILL" VÀ "BE GOING TO"

1. Dạng thức của động từ

Dạng thức của động từ thường với will và be going to

Will:

S + will + V

Be going to:

S + am/is/are + going to + V

Ex: She will eat less fast food.

Cô ấy sẽ hạn chế ăn đồ ăn nhanh.

We are going to try aromatherapy.

Chúng tôi sẽ thử liệu pháp trị liệu bằng tinh dầu thơm.

2. Cách dùng

❖ Khác biệt 1

Will: diễn tả quyết định *tức thời* đưa ra ngay tại thời điểm nói về sự việc trong tương lai.

Be going to: diễn tả dự định, quyết định *có sẵn trước thời điểm* nói về sự việc trong tương lai.

Ex: Someone's calling. - OK. I'll answer it.

Có ai đang gọi kìa. - Được rồi. Em sẽ đi trả lời.

It's Andy's birthday tomorrow. - I know. I'm going to bring some cakes.

Ngày mai là sinh nhật Andy đấy. - Tôi biết mà. Tôi sẽ mang một ít bánh đến.

❖ Khác biệt 2

Will

Chức năng diễn đạt: Dự đoán về tương lai dựa trên quan điểm cá nhân của người nói

Dấu hiệu nhận biết: think, hope, guess, I'm afraid, probably, perhaps, maybe

Ví dụ: I think he'll go to the gym.

(Tôi nghĩ anh ấy sẽ đến phòng tập.)

Can you guess who will be the winner?

(Bạn có đoán được ai sẽ là người chiến thắng không?)

I'm afraid he won't come.

(Tôi e rằng anh ấy sẽ không đến.)

Be going to

Chức năng diễn đạt: Dự đoán về tương lai dựa trên cơ sở, dấu hiệu thực tế ở thời điểm hiện tại

Dấu hiệu nhận biết:

Look at the grey clouds! *(Hãy nhìn những đám mây đen kìa!)*

We only have five minutes left. *(Chúng mình chỉ còn có 5 phút nữa thôi.)*

Ví dụ: We only have five minutes left. We are going to be late for the meeting. *(Chúng ta chỉ còn 5 phút nữa thôi. Chúng ta sẽ bị muộn họp.)*

Look at the long queue. We are going to wait for hours. *(Nhìn hàng dài kìa. Chúng mình sẽ phải đợi nhiều giờ đồng hồ rồi.)*

3. Một số cách sử dụng khác của "Will"

a. Diễn đạt yêu cầu ai đó làm gì (Request)

Will được dùng để diễn đạt lời yêu cầu của chúng ta khi muốn ai đó làm gì. Ta sử dụng "**Will you + V?**"

Ex: Will you show me how to use a computer?

Cháu chỉ cho bác cách sử dụng máy tính được không?

Will you help me move this table?

Cậu giúp tớ di chuyển cái bàn này được không?

b. Diễn đạt lời đề nghị được giúp ai đó (Offers)

Will còn được dùng để diễn đạt sự đề nghị được giúp đỡ ai đó.

Ex: The bags look heavy. I will carry them for you.

Những cái túi đó nhìn có vẻ nặng đấy. Mình sẽ xách cho cậu.

The stadium is far from here. I will drive you there.

Sân vận động khá xa đó. Tớ sẽ chở cậu đến đó.

c. Diễn đạt lời hứa (Promise)

Will được dùng để diễn đạt lời hứa.

Ex: I promise I will buy you ice-creams if you get an A.

Chị hứa sẽ mua kem cho em nếu em đạt điểm A.

I promise I will not tell anyone.

Tớ hứa sẽ không nói với ai đâu.

d. Diễn đạt lời mời (Invitation)

Will cũng được dùng khi chúng ta muốn mời ai đó. Ta sử dụng "**Will you + V?**"

Ex: Will you have some cakes?

Cậu ăn một ít bánh nhé?

Will you come over and have lunch today?

Nay cậu qua nhà tớ và ăn trưa nhé?

e. Diễn đạt sự từ chối hay thái độ không sẵn lòng (Refusal)

Chúng ta sử dụng thể phủ định của thì tương lai đơn (won't) để diễn đạt ý từ chối, hay không hợp tác làm một việc gì đó.

Ex: The computer won't start although I've done everything I can.

Cái máy tính không chịu khởi động dù tớ đã làm mọi cách có thể.

The baby won't stop crying.

Em bé không chịu nín khóc.

f. Diễn đạt sự đe dọa (Threat)

Will còn được dùng để diễn đạt sự đe dọa hay cảnh cáo.

Ex: Study hard or you will fail the exam.

Học hành chăm chỉ vào nếu không con sẽ bị trượt đấy.

Don't tell this to anyone or I'll never see you.

Đừng có nói chuyện này với ai không thì tớ sẽ không bao giờ nhìn mặt cậu nữa.

B. THỂ BỊ ĐỘNG CỦA MỘT SỐ THÌ CƠ BẢN

PASSIVE VOICE IN SOME TENSES

1. Cách sử dụng và dạng thức của câu bị động

a. Cách sử dụng

- Câu bị động được dùng để nhấn mạnh vào hành động hơn là người thực hiện hành động đó.

Ex: Daniel will be picked up at the airport by his cousin.

Daniel sẽ được đón ở sân bay bởi người anh họ của cậu ấy.

- Ngoài ra câu bị động còn được dùng khi chúng ta không biết rõ ai/cái gì đã thực hiện hành động.

Ex: The painting was stolen.

Bức tranh đã bị lấy cắp.

b. Dạng thức của câu bị động

Câu chủ động:

S + V + O

Câu bị động:

S + to be + V.p.p. + (by O).

LƯU Ý: Chủ ngữ trong câu chủ động trở thành tân ngữ được giới thiệu sau giới từ "by", còn tân ngữ trong câu chủ động trở thành chủ ngữ trong câu bị động. V.p.p là động từ ở dạng phân từ hai.

Ex: Susan will look after the children.

Susan sẽ chăm sóc lũ trẻ.

→ The children will be looked after by Susan.

Lũ trẻ sẽ được chăm sóc bởi Susan.

LƯU Ý: Các chủ ngữ *people, they, we, someone* khi chuyển sang câu bị động trở thành *by people, by them, by us, by someone*. Các thành phần này thường được bỏ đi.

Ex: They don't speak English in this country.

Họ không nói tiếng Anh ở đất nước này.

English is not spoken in this country.

Tiếng Anh không được nói ở đất nước này.

2. Câu bị động ở một số thì cơ bản

a. Câu bị động ở thì hiện tại đơn

Câu chủ động:

$S + V/V(s, es) + O.$

Câu bị động:

$S + am/is/are + V.p.p. + (by O).$

Ex: I do my homework every day.

Tôi làm bài tập về nhà hàng ngày.

→ My homework is done every day.

Bài tập về nhà của tôi được làm hàng ngày.

People use acupressure and massage to treat certain ailments.

Người ta sử dụng thuật bấm huyệt và mát-xa để chữa một số bệnh nhất định.

→ Acupressure and massage are used to treat certain ailments.

Thuật bấm huyệt và mát-xa được sử dụng để chữa một số bệnh nhất định.

b. Câu bị động ở thì hiện tại tiếp diễn

Câu chủ động:

$S + am/is/are + V-ing + O.$

Câu bị động:

$S + am/is/are + being + V.p.p. + (by O).$

Ex: My mother is preparing dinner.

Mẹ tôi đang nấu bữa tối.

→ Dinner is being prepared by my mother.

Bữa tối đang được nấu bởi mẹ tôi.

I am making cakes. Tôi đang làm bánh.

→ Cakes are being made by me.

Bánh đang được làm bởi tôi.

c. Câu bị động ở thì quá khứ đơn

Câu chủ động:

S+ V.(past tense) + O.

Câu bị động:

S+ was/were + V.p.p. + (by O).

Ex: Someone broke into my house last Saturday.

Có người đã đột nhập vào nhà tôi hôm thứ Bảy vừa rồi.

→ My house was broken into last Saturday.

Nhà tôi bị đột nhập vào hôm thứ Bảy vừa rồi.

The teacher told them a funny story.

Cô giáo đã kể cho họ nghe một câu chuyện hài hước.)

→ They were told a funny story by the teacher.

Họ đã được kể cho nghe một câu chuyện hài hước bởi cô giáo.

d. Câu bị động ở thì tương lai đơn

Câu chủ động:

S + will V + O.

Câu bị động:

S + will be + V.p.p. + (by O).

Ex: His mother will look after him. *Mẹ cậu ấy sẽ chăm sóc cậu ấy.*

→ He will be looked after by his mother. *Cậu ấy sẽ được chăm sóc bởi mẹ cậu ấy.*

They will try aromatherapy.

Họ sẽ thử phương pháp chữa bệnh bằng tinh dầu thơm.

→ Aromatherapy will be tried.

Phương pháp chữa bệnh bằng tinh dầu thơm sẽ được thử.

e. Câu bị động với "be going to"

Câu chủ động:

S + am/is/are + going to V + O.

Câu bị động:

S + am/is/are + going to be + V.p.p. + (by O).

Ex: They are going to improve the health care system.
Họ sẽ nâng cao hệ thống chăm sóc sức khỏe.
 → The health care system is going to be improved.
Hệ thống chăm sóc sức khỏe sẽ được nâng cao.
 She is going to write a letter. *Cô ấy sẽ viết một bức thư.*
 → A letter is going to be written by her. *Một lá thư sẽ được viết bởi cô ấy.*

f. Câu bị động ở thì hiện tại hoàn thành

Câu chủ động:

S + has/have + V.p.p. + O.

Câu bị động:

S + has/have + been + V.p.p. + (by O).

Ex: They have taken the child to the zoo.
Họ vừa mới đưa đứa trẻ tới tham quan sở thú.
 → The child has been taken to the zoo.
Đứa trẻ vừa được đưa tới tham quan sở thú.
 They have just sold out the tickets. *Họ vừa bán hết vé.*
 → Tickets have just been sold out. *Vé vừa mới được bán hết.*

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. stomach | B. <u>chest</u> | C. <u>ch</u> ord | D. psych <u>o</u> logy |
| 2. A. digestive | B. suggest | C. <u>ma</u> ssage | D. allergy |
| 3. A. sk <u>u</u> ll | B. st <u>u</u> dy | C. l <u>u</u> ng | D. <u>circu</u> latory |
| 4. A. <u>re</u> sistance | B. respiratory | C. <u>ve</u> ssel | D. <u>sys</u> tem |
| 5. A. s <u>u</u> gary | B. acup <u>re</u> ssure | C. <u>int</u> estine | D. s <u>u</u> re |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

1. Choose the right words to the pictures.

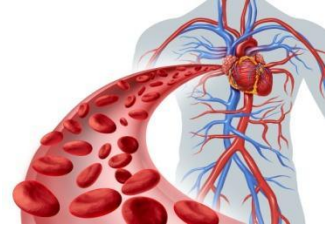
bone - lung - blood vessel - skin - stomach - brain



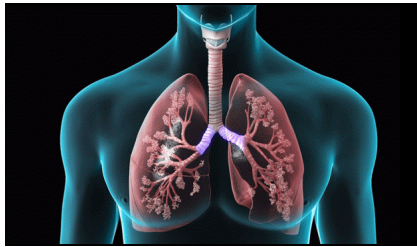
1. ___ **brain** ___



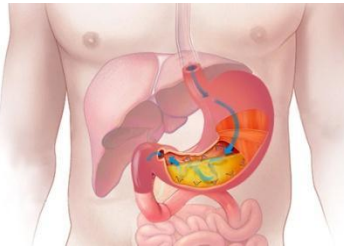
2. ___ **skin** ___



3. ___ **blood vessel** ___



4. ___ **lung** ___



5. ___ **stomach** ___



6. ___ **bone** ___

II. Match the two columns to make meaningful sentences.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Stress | a. can be effectively reduced by doing yoga. |
| a | |
| 2. Treatment for this type of disease | b. can prevent many common diseases. |
| c | |
| 3. A healthy lifestyle | c. can take a long time. |
| b | |
| 4. Remember | d. is not just about embarrassment, it may be a sign of other health problems. |
| f | |
| 5. Read the following information | e. to learn about what a food allergy is. |
| e | |
| 6. Bad breath | f. to include these five foods in your diet to boost your health. |
| d | |

III. Choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

- In some countries, a ____ is usually done along with a haircut.
 A. bone B. blood vessel **C. head massage** D. allergy
- Be careful. The ____ of this medicine can be very dangerous.
 A. price B. place C. date **D. side effects**
- People are waiting for a ____ system with better doctors and facilities in this country.
A. health care B. educational C. entertainment D. transportation
- Stress is the number 1 cause of ____, in other words, unhealthy sleep patterns.

A. stomach ache B. flu C. cold D. sleeplessness

5. If you feel sleepy all the time, you are having ____.

A. sleeplessness B. sleepiness C. a toothache D. a headache

IV. Complete the following sentences using the given phrases. There are two phrases that you don't need.

allergy - sugary drinks - calorie need - whole grains

harmony - treatment - food pyramid - balance between yin and yang

1. The ____ **food pyramid** ____ is to help you make better food choices.
2. Your daily ____ **calorie need** ____ is certainly very different from your grandmother's.
3. It is believed that ____ **harmony** ____ between people and their environment is very important to human health.
4. Besides tooth decay, ____ **sugary drinks** ____ can cause many other serious health problems.
5. It is suggested that you eat three or more foods of ____ **whole grains** ____ every day.
6. It is traditionally believed that you are healthy when there is a ____ **balance between yin and yang** ____.

V. Choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

1. Asian people have a lot of traditional health beliefs and ____.

A. activities B. practices C. actions

2. In ____, special thin needles are put in different pressure points all over the body.

A. acupuncture B. aromatherapy C. acupoint

3. A woman's heart beats faster than that of a man because it has to ____ the same amount of blood although it's smaller.

A. change B. pump C. sell

4. Don't worry. It's just a ____ and will naturally disappear after a few days.

A. serious disease B. unusual illness C. common ailment

5. Remember to read the safety _____. If you have any questions, please check with your doctor.

A. precautions B. use C. treatment

VI. Complete the following sentences using the given words/phrases. There are three words/phrases that you don't need.

disorder therapy nerve bacterium intestine
skull skeleton spine immune system

1. The role of the _____ **immune system** _____ is to protect our body against various diseases.
2. Have you tried any _____ **therapy** _____ for your sleeplessness?
3. Her disease was caused by a strange _____ **bacterium** _____ type.
4. She has experienced a sleeping _____ **disorder** _____ since her husband's death.
5. Food passes from the stomach to the small _____ **intestine** _____ and from there to the large one.
6. The _____ **skeleton** _____ is the structure of bones which supports your body.

VII. Choose the options that best fit the blanks.

1. What terrible traffic! Just look at the long queue. We _____ miss our flight.
A. will B. are going to C. Both A & B.
2. I _____ send Alex your letter when I see her tomorrow.
A. will B. are going to C. Both A & B.
3. The board of directors have reached the final decision. Harrison _____ lead the marketing team from next month.
A. will B. are going to C. Both A & B.
4. I hope you _____ visit my new house in Charlington some time.
A. will B. are going to C. Both A & B.
5. In the future, many young people _____ start up their own businesses.
A. will B. are going to C. Both A & B.

VIII. Decide whether the following sentences are Correct or Incorrect.

1. We are so excited about our trip next month to Austria. We will visit Vienna before travelling
Incorrect
to Salzburg.
2. Just a moment. I will help you carry these heavy bags.
Correct
3. Thanks. I think my mother is going to like this cookbook.
Incorrect
4. In the future, electric bikes will replace bicycles.
Correct
5. As planned, Elizabeth will visit our franchise company in southern Turkey.
Incorrect

6. Linh is so nervous! She will have a baby.

Incorrect

IX. Decide whether the following sentences are intention or prediction.

	Intention	Prediction
1. This hometown will change a lot more when we grow older.		√
2. In a few years to come, our country is going to join many other multinational organizations.		√
3. What are they going to do with such a huge sum of money they inherit from their grandmother?	√	
4. Susan isn't going to teach in Vietnam. She wants to settle down in her hometown in Georgia.	√	
5. Marian is going to throw a party next week.	√	
6. Hurry up. We only have ten minutes left. We are going to be late for class.		√
7. Jack and his friends are going to run a restaurant in South Street.	√	
8. People will rely more and more on technology than ever.		√
9. What do you think will happen if Albeit Landon is appointed to the Sales Manager position		√
10. Do you think he will be the President?		√

X. Provide the correct verbs in the form of "will" or "be going to" to fill in the blanks.

- Kate **is not going to join** (not join) us next Friday; she will be taking exams that day.
- A: What are your plans for the holiday?
B: I **am going to visit** (visit) my grandparents and then go trekking in Sapa.
- A: I can't fix the problem in my computer, Jason.
B: Alright. I **will take** (take) a look at it.
- What are you doing? The car engine has just broken. It **will not work** (not work).
- I **will take** (take) you out for ice-cream as long as you get an A on your Math test.
- Do you think they **will win** (win) the championship?
- A: Do you want to have the pork or the beef?
B: I think we **will have** (have) the beef, please.
- According to schedule, rice and clothes **are going to be** (be) distributed to nine poorest communes in the next project.

XI. Provide the correct verbs in the form of "will" or "be going to" to fill in the blanks.

1. A: Did you buy chicken?

B: Oh, no! I forgot to buy it. I **will remember** to buy some tomorrow. (remember)

2. A: Why are you putting on your coat?

B: I **am going to take** my dog out for a walk. (take)

3. I bought a new book this morning. I **am going to stay** at home and start reading my favorite chapter. (stay)

4. What **will happen** to Daniel's family if he still doesn't find a job? (happen)

5. A: Why are you waking up at 2 a.m.?

B: I **am going to watch** the match between Liverpool and Manchester United. (watch)

6. A: I can't hear the television!

B: I **will turn** it up so that you can hear it. (turn)

7. A: Aw. I'm about to fall asleep. I had very little sleep last night.

B: Oh, dear? I **will get** you a cup of coffee. That will wake you up. (get)

8. They are going to deliver the sofas to my flat this afternoon. I just can't handle them on my own. **Will**

you **come** to give a hand? (come)

9. As soon as the weather's fine again, we **will walk** down to the beach and you can take a lot of photos there. (walk)

10. A: What do you want to study after graduation?

B: I **am going to study** Environmental Economics. I've always been interested since I read a book about it. (study)

11. Her husband found a new job in Tottenham last month. They **are going to move** to the city next week. (move)

XII. Choose from the given verbs to fill in each blank ("will" or "be going to"): put, leave, pick, give (x2), visit, get, turn

1. The Brooklyns made a final decision yesterday evening. They **are going to leave** Edinburg for Nice.

2. Don't worry, I **will give** you a ring when I arrive at the airport.

3. Sorry, I can't meet you this afternoon. I **am going to visit** a friend of mine in hospital.

4. I forgot my course book home this morning. Can I borrow yours? I **will give** it back to you after using it.
5. Jane has decided that she **is going to put** up with her flatmate. She doesn't want to move to another flat.
6. I'm having a class meeting this afternoon. **Will** you **pick** up the children at 5?
7. I hope you and Glenn **will get** along well with each other sharing this room from now on.
8. Last night, I phoned to ask Susan to come; she **is going to turn** up at Mary's birthday party next Sunday.

XIII. Give the correct forms in Passive Voice of the verbs. Use the tenses in the brackets.

1. Late submission of the assignment **will not be accepted** (not accept). (Future Simple)
2. His articles **are read** (read) by many people. (Present Simple)
3. Waste paper **is recycled** (recycle) in this factory. (Present Simple)
4. It **is thought** (think) that Jack stole the painting last night. (Present Simple)
5. A lot of presents **are going to be given** (give) to the children at Christmas. (Future – be going to)
6. Little John **was punished** (punish) by his parents yesterday. (Past Simple)
7. We **have been taught** (teach) by Mrs. Joanna since April. (Present Perfect)

XIV. Decide whether the following sentences are Correct or Incorrect.

- | | Correct | Incorrect |
|--|---------|-----------|
| 1. She was apologized to me for her insensitive behavior at the party. | | √ |
| 2. The problem is not paid enough attention to at the conference last month. | | √ |
| 3. Artificial flowers are not given on special occasions in Russia. | √ | |
| 4. This fund was found in 2002 to help students born to poor families and orphans. | | √ |
| 5. He was received her letter this morning. | | √ |
| 6. I hope the campaign will be taken place successfully. | | √ |
| 7. The job was offered to Yoko but she turned it down. | √ | |
| 8. How was he reacted to their final decision? | | √ |

9. Jack and Helen will be punished if they continue to play truant in Ms. Katherine's class.

✓

10. Will be newspapers delivered to our house during the holiday?

✓

XV. Choose the correct sentence among the given ones.

1.

A. She was given a new dictionary on her last birthday.

B. A new dictionary is given to her on her last birthday.

C. She was gave a new dictionary on her last birthday.
2.

A. Traditional medicine is believed to be safer than drugs.

B. It believes that traditional medicine is safer than drugs.

C. Traditional medicine believes to be safer than drugs.
3.

A. Where all the assignments are kept?

B. Where are all the assignments kept?

C. Where are all the assignments keep?
4.

A. We were not tell the good news.

B. The good news was not told to us.

C. The good news were not told to us.
5.

A. Our house will be took care of during our holiday.

B. Our house will take care of during our holiday.

C. Our house will be taken care of during our holiday
6.

A. When will Johny be picked up?

B. When Johny will be picked up?

C. When will be Johny picked up?
7.

A. Tickets are going to be sold from Saturday.

B. Tickets are going to sell from Saturday.

C. Tickets are going to be sell from Saturday.
8.

A. The girl has brought up by her aunt since 2010.

B. The girl has been brought up by her aunt since 2010.

C. The girl has been bringing up by her aunt since 2010.

XVI. Give the correct forms in Passive voice of the verbs given in the brackets.

1. Homework _____ **is assigned** _____ (assign) twice a week.
2. Why _____ **was** _____ the car _____ **stolen** _____ (steal) yesterday?
3. French and English _____ **are spoken** _____ (speak) in Canada.

4. How _____ **is** _____ information _____ **stored** _____ (store) in our brain?
5. I promise that the money _____ **will be paid** _____ (pay) back to you soon.
6. Yesterday, applicants for this position _____ **were examined** _____ (examine) thoroughly.
7. He _____ **was punished** _____ (punish) by his father yesterday.
8. Linh _____ **was offered** _____ (offer) the job last month but she turned it down.
9. I think an alternative therapy _____ **will be recommended** _____ (recommend) if medical therapy doesn't work.
10. The car _____ **is being repaired** _____ (repair) at the moment. It broke up in an accident last Sunday.

XVII. Find a wrong/ redundant word in each sentence.

1. The restaurant we went to yesterday was not beautifully decorated, but the food **is** well cooked.

_____ **was** _____

2. The city hall was painted and **tidy** up by a group of people.

_____ **tidied** _____

3. Toxic gases are exhaled by factories and **inhale** by people living in surrounding areas.

_____ **inhaled** _____

4. We were all **frightening** by the loud noise at midnight last night.

_____ **frightened** _____

5. What will be **make** about the future development of rural areas to slow down urban sprawl?

_____ **made** _____

6. What song is that song writer best **knew** for?

_____ **known** _____

7. They will be **discourage** to know their test results.

_____ **discouraged** _____

8. Alex and Wong won't **be** hang out any more as they are moving to different places.

_____ **bỏ**
“be” _____

9. The complex **was** started to be built last month.

_____ **bỏ**
“was” _____

10. Are natural oils **extract** from some parts of plants to treat certain ailments?
_____ **extracted** _____

XVIII. Choose the options that best fit the blanks.

1. I'm not sure about it. Maybe your car _____ until tomorrow afternoon.

- A. will not be repaired B. is not going to be repaired C. was not repaired

2. The campaign against HIV/AIDS _____ in 2009.

- A. has been launched B. was launched C. was being
launched

3. Ho Chi Minh Mausoleum _____ weekly on Fridays, so we cannot visit there today.

- A. was maintained B. is maintained C. will be maintained

4. The school _____ in 1962.

- A. has been found B. was founded C. was found

5. The football match _____ because of the heavy rain yesterday afternoon.

- A. is postponed B. would be postponed C. was postponed

6. As planned, the Christmas party _____ at Mandison's next year.

- A. is going to be held B. will be held C. is held

C. READING

I. Read the passage and do the tasks below.

Most people relate stress to physical symptoms like an upset stomach or headaches. Research has suggested that negative emotions and thoughts may also have close links to our brain. Researchers have started finding out why we tend to remember negative things more strongly and in more detail than good ones. “The brain handles positive and negative information in different parts. Negative emotions involve more thinking, and the information is processed more thoroughly. Thus, we tend to ruminate more about unpleasant events and use stronger words to describe them than happy ones,” said Clifford Nass, a professor at Stanford University.

Rick Hanson also shares the idea that our minds naturally focus on the bad and discard the good. He stated, “negative stimuli produce more neural activity than do equally intense positive ones. They are also perceived more easily and quickly.” This was obtained from his little

experiment in which twenty people were asked to look at pictures showing anger or happiness. The participants could identify angry faces faster than happy ones even if it was so quickly.

In a journal article Baumeister co-authored in 2001, "Bad is Stronger Than Good", he concluded, "bad emotions, bad parents and bad feedback have more impact than good ones." This is "a basic and wide-ranging principle of psychology". Thus, Baumeister and his colleagues noted that bad incidents, such as losing your dreamy job and breaking up with your girlfriend or boyfriend, may have a greater impact than landing a job or receiving a marriage proposal.

Part 1. Choose the best answers to complete the following sentences.

1. People have generally related stress to _____.
 A. physical symptoms B. brain damage C. ruined relationships with other people
2. Positive events _____ to perceive than/as negative ones.
 A. less time B. more time C. the same amount of time
3. Positive things _____.
 A. do not produce neural activity
 B. produce more neural activity than negative ones
 C. produce less neural activity than negative ones
4. The best title for the above text is _____.
 A. Stress makes us tired
 B. People try to forget bad events.
 C. Bad events have stronger impacts than good ones

Part 2. Decide whether the following statements are True (T), False (F) or Not Given (NG).

- | | T | F | NG |
|---|---|---|----|
| 1. Positive emotions are easier to be forgotten than negative ones. | √ | | |
| 2. All information is processed in the same part of the brain. | | √ | |
| 3. The more we try to forget a bad event, the more we think about it. | | | √ |
| 4. Positive thoughts protect us from stress. | | | √ |
| 5. It's a wide-ranging rule that bad events have more influence on us than good ones. | √ | | |

Part 3. Choose A, B or C to answer the following questions. Which person ...?

1. _____ did an experiment with a small group of people.
 A. Clifford Nass B. Rick Hanson C. Baumeister

2. ____ mentions that we use stronger words to speak about unpleasant events.
 A. Clifford Nass B. Rick Hanson C. Baumeister
3. ____ gives specific examples of unhappy events.
 A. Clifford Nass B. Rick Hanson C. Baumeister
4. ____ co-authored to publish a journal article
 A. Clifford Nass B. Rick Hanson C. Baumeister

II. Choose the best answer to fill in the blank.

A lot of people like to play their records as loudly as possible. The (1) ____ is that the rest of the family and the neighbors often complain (2) ____ don't like the music. One (3) ____ to this problem is to wear headphones, but headphones are usually uncomfortable.

An arm-chair which has a record-player built into it has just been (4) ____ by a British engineer, Stephen Court.

The armchair looks like an ordinary armchair with high back. However, each of the two sides of the chair has three loudspeakers inside to reproduce middle and high sounds. Low sounds are reproduced by a pair of loudspeakers in a hollow (5) ____ under the seat. Anyone who sits in the chair hears sounds coming from all around his/her head.

Because we cannot tell the exact (6) ____ from which low sounds come, it doesn't (7) ____ that they come from underneath or behind. It is the higher sounds coming from the sides of the chair that create a stereo effect.

These sounds travel only a few inches to reach the listener's ears. (8) ____, it takes only a little power to make the music sound very loud. Only a small amount of sound leaks out from behind the chair into the room to (9) ____ others. Most of the sound is (10) ____ by the listeners.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. conclusion | B. impact | C. sequence | D. result |
| 2. A. if | B. for | C. lest | D. since |
| 3. A. way | B. answer | C. conclusion | D. settlement |
| 4. A. drawn | B. discovered | C. imagined | D. designed |
| 5. A. hole | B. set | C. location | D. space |
| 6. A. destination | B. reason | C. source | D. departure |
| 7. A. care | B. make sense | C. matter | D. mean |
| 8. A. Surprisingly | B. Strangely | C. Consequently | D. Eventually |
| 9. A. disappoint | B. dismiss | C. deter | D. disturb |
| 10. A. integrated | B. absorbed | C. admitted | D. accommodated |

III. Choose the sentence which is closest in meaning with the given one.

1. The room was so full that we couldn't get in.
 - A. The room was too full for us to get in.
 - B. The room was too full so that we can't get in.
 - C. The room was too full that we can't get in.
 - D. The room was too full that we couldn't get in.
2. I wish I had chosen English to study at school.
 - A. The speaker studied English and now regrets doing so.
 - B. The speaker is not studying English.
 - C. The speaker regrets not choosing English at school.
 - D. The speaker regrets having chosen English to study.
3. Leather gloves last longer than plastic ones.
 - A. Plastic gloves last not as long as leather ones.
 - B. Plastic gloves last shorter than leather ones.
 - C. Plastic gloves don't last as much as leather ones.
 - D. Plastic gloves don't last as long as leather ones.
4. The book interested me more than the film.
 - A. I thought the book was more interesting than the film.
 - B. I thought the book was more interested than the film.
 - C. I thought the book was as interesting as the film.
 - D. I thought the book was not as interesting as the film.
5. The teacher did not allow the class to leave before 4:30.
 - A. The teacher made the class to stay until after 4:30.
 - B. The teacher made the class not leave until after 4:30.
 - C. The teacher made the class stay until after 4:30.
 - D. The teacher made the class leave after 4:30.
6. If I were you, I'd look for another job.

A. I suggest that you looked for another job.	B. I suggest looking for another job.
C. I suggest you to look for another job.	D. I suggest that you look for another job.
7. I only remembered the appointment when it was too late.
 - A. It was only when it was too late that I remembered the appointment.
 - B. Not until it was too late that I remembered the appointment.

- C. Only when it was too late that I remembered the appointment.
 D. It was not until it was too late did I remember the appointment.
8. She finds it difficult to get up early.
 A. She used to get up early. B. She didn't use to get up early.
 C. She isn't used to getting up early. D. She is used to getting up early.
9. I met her when I was staying in Paris last summer.
 A. I had met her before I went to Paris last summer.
 B. I met her during my stay in Paris last summer.
 C. I met her after I went to Paris last summer.
 D. I met her during I was staying in Paris last summer.
10. Do shops usually stay open so late in this country?
 A. Are shops usually opened so late in this country?
 B. Do you usually open shops so late in this country?
 C. Is it usual for shops to be opened so late in this country?
 D. Is it usual for shops to stay open so late in this country?

D. WRITING

I. Write and reply to an inquiry letter for health advice

Dear Dr. Glenn,

I am coming to an important interview next Friday, but I have no ideas about what to eat before the interview. Could you give me some suggestions on what foods to eat and avoid?

I am looking forward to hearing from you.

Regards,

Jack

II. Rewrite the following sentences without changing their meaning, using the given words.

- It's a pity I didn't go on holiday with my class last week.
 I wish _____ **I had gone on holiday with my class last week** _____
- My friends and I got lost in the woods because we didn't bring a compass.
 My friends and I wouldn't _____ **have got lost in the woods if we had brought a compass** _____
- My sister enjoys coke more than lemonade.

- My sister prefers _____ **coke to lemonade** _____
4. Jenny has the same number of shirts as Jack.
Jack has as _____ **many shirts as Jenny** _____
5. It is possible that Linh will go to the party with her boyfriend tonight.
Linh may _____ **go to the party with her boyfriend tonight** _____
6. Steven Spielberg has directed a lot of successful films.
A lot of successful films _____ **have been directed by Steven Spielberg** _____
7. Her hair needs cutting.
She needs _____ **to have her hair cut** _____
8. The robber made the bank clerk give him all the money.
The robber forced _____ **the bank clerk to give him all the money** _____
9. "I'll help you to repair your motorbike tomorrow," my father said to me.
My father told me _____ **he would help me to repair my motorbike the following day** _____
10. Jimmy has a cold. He still wants to take part in the football match.
Despite having _____ **a cold, Jimmy still wants to take part in the football match** _____.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the rest.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. relaxed <u>e</u> | B. reach <u>e</u> d | C. suppos <u>e</u> dly | D. cross <u>e</u> d |
| 2. A. mach <u>i</u> ne | B. stomac <u>h</u> | C. arch <u>i</u> teature | D. ch <u>o</u> rus |
| 3. A. mat <u>u</u> re | B. past <u>u</u> re | C. gest <u>u</u> re | D. creat <u>u</u> re |
| 4. A. individ <u>u</u> al | B. consid <u>e</u> rate | C. educat <u>i</u> on | D. proced <u>u</u> re |
| 5. A. laugh <u>u</u> | B. thoug <u>h</u> | C. toug <u>h</u> | D. enoug <u>h</u> |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. A. politics | B. literature | C. chemistry | D. statist <u>i</u> c <u>s</u> |
| 2. A. likeable | B. oxygen | C. museu <u>m</u> | D. energy |
| 3. A. apology | B. stupidit <u>y</u> | C. generou <u>s</u> ly | D. astron <u>o</u> my |
| 4. A. telev <u>i</u> sion | B. disting <u>u</u> ish | C. immediat <u>e</u> | D. acquainta <u>n</u> ce |
| 5. A. exper <u>i</u> ence | B. introd <u>u</u> ce | C. determin <u>e</u> | D. applia <u>n</u> ce |

B. LEXICO-GRAMMAR

I. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. She put ____ speaking to him as long as possible.
A. off B. over C. away D. back
2. She ____ her neighbour's children for the broken window.
A. accused B. complained C. blamed D. denied
3. ____ Internet can be used as ____ means of education and communication.
A. An - a B. The - a C. The - the D. Ø - a
4. She is traveling to work by bus today because her car is being ____.
A. stopped B. broken C. serviced D. rented
5. Tony's boss doesn't want him to ____ a habit of using the office phone for his personal calls.
A. make B. do C. have D. increase
6. My parents were so disappointed when I ____ college.
A. got out of B. fell out of C. dropped out of D. moved out of
7. The noisy children ____ my nerves. I wish they'd quiet down!
A. get out of B. get in C. get into D. get on
8. On the table ____.
A. the disks lay B. did the disks lie C. lay the disks D. lied the disks
9. She wondered ____ her father looked like now after so many years away.
A. how B. whose C. that D. what
10. The company was finally safe ____ bankruptcy.
A. with B. by C. from D. in
11. All the boys are good at cooking, but ____ is as good as the girls.
A. either B. none C. neither D. every
12. The bank is reported in the local newspapers ____ in the broad daylight.
A. to be robbed B. robbed C. to have been robbed D. having been robbed
13. Clothing made of plastic fibers has certain advantages over ____ made of natural fibers like cotton, wool, or silk.
A. that B. the one C. what D. which
14. The government would be forced to use its emergency powers ____ further rioting to occur.
A. should B. did C. were D. had
15. ____ we have finished the course, we shall start doing more revision work.
A. For now B. Now that C. Ever since D. By now
16. Go on. Tell me the gossips. I'm all ____.

- A. full B. head C. eyes **D. ears**
17. If only motorists _____ drive more carefully.
A. might B. shall **C. would** D. should
18. He lost control of his temper and _____ his anger.
A. lost sight of B. took note of C. made room for **D. gave way to**
19. Mr. Nixon refused to answer the questions on the _____ that the matter was confidential.
A. reason B. excuses **C. grounds** D. foundations
20. _____ at his lessons, he couldn't catch up with his classmates.
A. Hardly as he worked **B. Hard as he worked** C. Hard as he does D. Hard as he was
21. _____ is more interested in rhythm than in melody is apparent from his compositions.
A. That Philip Glass B. Philip Glass, who C. Philip Glass D. Because Philip Glass
22. _____ invisible to the unaided eye, ultraviolet light can be detected in a number of ways.
A. Although is B. Despite C. Even though it **D. Although**
23. In fact, the criminals _____ in because the front door was wide open and they just walked in.
A. needn't have broken B. shouldn't have break
C. didn't need to break D. couldn't have broken
24. Nam: In my opinion, computer is one of the most wonderful inventions.
Lan: _____.
A. There is no doubt about it. B. Yes. Congratulations!
C. You shouldn't have said that D. Pardon?
25. Nga: Would you mind if I closed the door? It's too cold outside.
Lan: _____.
A. I'd rather you didn't. It's stuffy. B. No, I don't like. C. No, never mind. D.

Why not do it?

II. Supply the correct tense or form of the verb in each of the following brackets.

- I'd rather you (not wear) _____ **didn't wear** _____ jeans to the office.
- The money (steal) _____ **stolen** _____ in the robbery was never found.
- This building (finish) _____ **will have been finished** _____ by the end of 2018.
- It was our fault to keep you waiting so long. We (inform) _____ **should have informed** _____ you in advance.
- You look tired. _____ **Have** _____ you (work) _____ **been working** _____ hard?

6. A: "Was Carol at the party last night?"

B: "Yes, she (wear) was wearing a really nice dress."

7. I remember (give) being given a toy drum on my fifth birthday.

8. It was urgent that she (leave) (should) leave at once.

9. Minh (steal) couldn't have stolen your money yesterday because we went out together all yesterday.

10. Jim hurt his arm while (play) playing - tennis.

III. Give the correct form of the word in each bracket in the following passage.

You may know that Asian, Middle Eastern and Mediterranean cultures have (1. TRADITION) traditionally used garlic in their dishes. What you may not know is that garlic is also thought of as a (2. VALUE) valuable medicine by many ancient civilizations. Today, (3. PROFESSION) professionals in the field of nutrition have come up with new information which is indeed quite (4. SURPRISE) surprising. Apparently, not only is garlic good for you but it also helps overcome various (5. ILL) illnesses. The main (6. ADVANTAGE) disadvantage to eating garlic is of course bad (7. BREATHE) breath. Cooking it reduces the strong smell and eating parsley, which is a natural deodorizer, also helps (8. MINIMUM) minimize/minimise the smell. Thus, it's time we took the benefits of garlic (9. SERIOUS) seriously. Why not add it to some of your (10. FAVOR) favorite/ favourite dishes?

IV. There are ten mistakes in the following passage. Find and correct them.

In many countries, in the process of industrialize, overcrowded cities present a major problem. The underpopulation of towns is mainly caused by the drift of great numbers of people in the rural areas. The only long-term solution is make life in the areas more attractively, which would encourage people to stay here. This could be achieved by providing incentives to people to go and work in the villages. Moreover, facilities in the rural areas, so as transportation, health, and educational services should be improved.

Your answers:

No	Mistake	Correction
1.	industrialize	industrialization
2.	underpopulation	overpopulation
3.	great	large
4.	in	from
5.	make	to make
6.	attractively	attractive

- | | | |
|-----|-------------|-----------|
| 7. | here | there |
| 8. | to | for |
| 9. | so as | such as |
| 10. | educational | education |

C. READING

1. Read the passage and choose the best option for each of the following blanks.

SPECTACULAR SPORTS

A surprising number of popular spectator sports, for example, football or baseball, (1) _____ in Europe or the USA in the 19th century. This did not happen by chance. It was the result of changes in the (2) _____ people lived in those places at that time. Until then more people lived in the country than in towns. They worked in small groups and had no (3) _____ time off. All this changed with the growth of factories and industry in the 19th century, first in Europe and then in the USA. For the first time most people began to live in towns, and they (4) _____ themselves with regular free time. They had more leisure time than (5) _____ before. This resulted (6) _____ the need for the organized entertainment. Suitable games were developed or invented, typically team games, in which the crowds could (7) _____ sides and become involved. This gave people some of the entertainment they needed in their free time. The (8) _____ explosion in TV, with the introduction of satellite and cable channels, has caused an increase in (9) _____ for sports as entertainment. The money TV has brought to games such as football, tennis, and baseball (10) _____ that spectator sports will certainly go on playing an important part in our lives.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. A. started | B. stemmed | C. came | D. appeared |
| 2. A. manner | B. style | C. method | D. way |
| 3. A. steady | B. square | C. regular | D. normal |
| 4. A. found | B. realized | C. presented | D. noticed |
| 5. A. just | B. having | C. ever | D. previously |
| 6. A. from | B. by | C. with | D. in |
| 7. A. choose | B. take | C. select | D. decide |
| 8. A. recent | B. late | C. lately | D. later |
| 9. A. need | B. requirement | C. request | D. demand |
| 10. A. signifies | B. concludes | C. means | D. states |

II. Read the text below and fill in each blank with ONE suitable word.

At sixteen, Henry Vincent was separated from his family as a result of the war. He wandered aimlessly from one country to another (1) _____ **before** _____ finally settling down in

Australia, (2) where he was trained as an electronics engineer. He established his own business but it called for so much work that marriage was out of the (3) question.

His retirement suddenly (4) made him realize how lonely he was and he decided to (5) take up a hobby. With his interest in electronics, amateur radio seemed a natural choice. He installed his own equipment and obtained a licence and his call sign, which is the set of letters and numbers used to identify oneself when making radio contact (6) with other radio amateurs all over the world.

Soon Henry had a great many contacts in far-off places. One in particular was a man in California with (7) whom he had much in common. One night the man in California happened to mention the village in Europe he had come from. Suddenly, Henry realised that this man was, in fact, his younger brother, Peter. At first, the two brothers were at a (8) loss for words but then little by little they filled (9) in the details of their past lives and not long afterwards Henry Vincent flew to California to (10) be reunited with his brother.

III. Read the following passage and choose the option that indicates the correct answer to each of the following questions.

The Winterthur Museum is a collection and a house. There are many museums **devoted to** the decorative arts and many house museums, but rarely in the United States is a great collection displayed in a great country house. Passing through successive generations of a single family, Winterthur has been a private estate for more than a century. Even after the extensive renovations made to **it** between 1929 and 1931, the house remained a family residence. This fact is of importance to the atmosphere and effect of the museum. **The impression of a lived-in house is apparent to the visitor**; the rooms look as if they were vacated only a short while ago - whether by the original owners of the furniture or the most recent residents of the house can be a matter of personal interpretation. Winterthur remains, then, a house in which a collection of furniture and architectural elements has been **assembled**. Like an English country house, it is an organic structure; the house, as well as the collection and manner of displaying it to the visitor, has changed over the years. The changes have coincided with **developing** concepts of the American arts, increased knowledge on the part of collectors and students, and a progression toward the achievement of a historical effect in period-room displays. The rooms at Winterthur have followed this current, yet still retained the character of a private house.

The concept of a period room as a display technique has developed gradually over the years in an effort to present works of art in a context that would show them to greater effect and would give them more meaning for the viewers. Comparable to the habitat group in a natural history museum, the period room represents the decorative arts in a lively and interesting manner and provides an opportunity to assemble objects related by style, date, or place of manufacture.

1. What does the passage mainly discuss?
- A. The reason that Winterthur was redesigned.
 - B. Elements that make Winterthur an unusual museum.
 - C. How Winterthur compares to English country houses.
 - D. Historical furniture contained in Winterthur.
2. The phrase "**devoted to**" in bold in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to ____.
- A. surrounded by
 - B. sentimental about
 - C. successful with
 - D. specializing in
3. What happened at Winterthur between 1929 and 1931?
- A. The owners moved out.
 - B. The old furniture was replaced.
 - C. The house was repaired.
 - D. The estate became a museum.
4. What does the author mean by stating "**The impression of a lived-in house is apparent to the visitor**" in paragraph 1?
- A. Winterthur is very old.
 - B. Winterthur does not look like a typical museum.
 - C. Few people visit Winterthur.
 - D. The furniture at Winterthur looks comfortable
5. The word "**assembled**" in bold in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to ____.
- A. developed
 - B. appreciated
 - C. brought together
 - D. fundamentally changed
6. The word "**it**" in bold in paragraph 1 refers to ____.
- A. Winterthur Museum
 - B. collection
 - C. English country house
 - D. visitor
7. The word "**developing**" in bold in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to
- A. traditional
 - B. exhibiting
 - C. informative
 - D. evolving
8. According to the passage, objects in a period room are related by all of the following EXCEPT ____.
- A. date
 - B. style
 - C. place of manufacture
 - D. past ownership
9. What is the relationship between the two paragraphs in the passage?
- A. The second paragraph explains a term that was mentioned in the first paragraph.
 - B. Each paragraph describes a different approach to the display of objects in a museum.

C. The second paragraph explains a philosophy art appreciation that contrasts with the philosophy explained in the first paragraph.

D. Each paragraph describes a different historical period.

D. WRITING

I. Finish the second sentence in such a way that it means exactly the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. My protests were ignored by everybody.
→ Nobody _____ **took any notice of my protests** _____
2. I was not surprised to hear that Harry had failed his driving test.
→ It came _____ **as no surprise to me to hear that Harry** _____
3. It was the fog that caused the traffic problem.
→ If it _____ **hadn't been for the fog, there wouldn't have been traffic problem** _____
4. We haven't received the confirmation of our hotel booking yet.
→ Our hotel booking _____ **hasn't been confirmed yet** _____
5. She didn't inherit anything under her uncle's will.
→ Her uncle didn't _____ **leave her anything in his will** _____
6. Betty is very happy to look after handicapped people.
→ Betty is devoted _____ **to looking after handicapped people** _____
7. Nicky runs a successful company and she also manages to look after her four children.
→ Not only _____ **does Nicky run a successful company, but she also manages to look after her four children** _____
8. He said that he had been a long way from the scene of the crime at the time.
→ He denied _____ **having witnessed the crime** _____
9. The only thing they didn't steal was the television.
→ They stole _____ **everything but / except (for) the television** _____
10. Experts think that all dogs evolved from wolves.
→ All dogs _____ **are thought/ believed/ said to have evolved/ descended from wolves** _____

II. Write a new sentence similar in meaning to the given one, using the word given in the brackets. Do not alter the word in any way.

1. I'll lend you the money on condition that you pay it back next week. (long)
I'll lend you the money as/ so long as you pay it back next week.

2. Bill was about to speed when he saw the patrolman. (verge)
Bill was on the verge of speeding when he saw the patrolman.
3. It is necessary for me to finish this homework tonight. (got)
I have got to finish this homework tonight.
4. She was cheated when she sold the jewelry at such a low price. (ride)
She was taken for a ride when she sold the jewelry at such a low price.
5. They arrived at their destination alive and kicking. (sound)
They arrived at their destination safe and sound.
6. It was the telephonist's fault that they didn't get the message. (blame)
The telephonist was to blame for the fact that they didn't get the message.
7. The disagreement is a lot of fuss about nothing. (teacup)
The disagreement is a storm in a teacup.
8. There's nothing new about defence alliances. (hills)
Defence alliances are as old as the hills.
9. They couldn't decide where to go on holiday. (reach)
They couldn't reach a decision on/ about where to go on holiday.
10. Why didn't they tell me about these changes earlier? (should)
I should have been told about these changes earlier.

Unit 3. MUSIC - KEY

PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

air	(v.)	lên sóng
audition	(n.)	sự thử giọng
ballade	(n.)	tình ca (cho piano hoặc dàn nhạc)
celebrity panel	(n. phr)	hội đồng giám khảo là những người nổi tiếng
conquer	(v.)	chinh phục, chiến thắng
cultural figure	(n. phr.)	nhân vật văn hóa
demanding	(adj.)	khó khăn, đòi hỏi khắt khe
franchise	(n.)	sự nhượng quyền thương hiệu
inspirational	(adj)	truyền cảm hứng

instrumental music	(n. phr)	nhạc không lời
melody	(n.)	giai điệu
national anthem	(n. phr)	quốc ca
nominate	(v.)	đề cử
nocturne	(n.)	dạ khúc
nuance	(n.)	sắc thái
originate	(v)	bắt đầu, khởi đầu
patriotic	(adj.)	yêu nước
patriotism	(n.)	lòng yêu nước
phenomenon	(n.)	hiện tượng
polonaise	(n.)	điệu nhảy truyền thống của người Ba Lan
prodigy	(n.)	thần đồng
prominent	(adj.)	quan trọng, nổi tiếng
reality TV Show	(n. phr)	chương trình truyền hình thực tế
renowned	(adj.)	nổi tiếng
sonata	(n.)	bản xô-nát
waltz	(n.)	điệu nhảy valse
achievement	(n.)	thành tựu
biography	(n.)	tiểu sử
box office	(n.)	phòng vé
competition	(n.)	cuộc thi
competitive	(adj.)	mang tính cạnh tranh
compose	(v.)	soạn, sáng tác
composer	(n.)	nhà soạn nhạc
contest	(n.)	cuộc thi
contestant	(n.)	thí sinh
debut album	(n.)	album đầu tay
deceive	(v.)	lừa dối
eliminate	(v.)	loại ra
innovation	(n.)	sự đổi mới
launch	(v.)	ra mắt, giới thiệu sản phẩm
modest	(adj.)	khiêm tốn

musical instrument	(n. phr.)	nhạc cụ
passionate	(adj.)	nồng nhiệt, đam mê
platinum	(n.)	đĩa bạch kim
process	(n.)	quá trình
purchase	(v.)	mua sắm
rating list	(n. phr.)	bảng xếp hạng
release	(v.)	phát hành
single	(n.)	đĩa đơn
smash hit	(n.)	sự thành công
talented	(adj.)	có tài
version	(n.)	phiên bản

B. GRAMMAR

I. CÂU GHÉP (COMPOUND SENTENCES)

1. Câu ghép

a. Khái niệm về câu ghép

Câu ghép trong tiếng Anh được hình thành bởi ít nhất 2 mệnh đề độc lập (Independent Clause), thường được nối bởi liên từ kết hợp (coordinating conjunction) và thêm dấu phẩy trước liên từ kết hợp đó.

Independent Clause 1, coordinating conjunction Independent Clause 2

b. Ví dụ

→ He is very handsome, and he speaks English very well.

(Anh ấy rất đẹp trai và anh ấy nói tiếng Anh rất hay.)

• Trong câu trên, mệnh đề 1 - "He is very handsome" kết nối với mệnh đề số 2 – "he speaks English very well" bằng liên từ "and" và cách nhau bởi dấu ","

→ She is a talented singer, so many people admire her.

Cô ấy là một ca sĩ tài năng vì thế rất nhiều người hâm mộ cô ấy.

Tương tự câu 1, trong câu này, mệnh đề 1 - "She is a talented singer" kết nối với mệnh đề số 2 - "many people admire her" bằng liên từ "so" và cách nhau bởi dấu ","

c. Một số ví dụ khác:

Last night, Mary went to her mother's home, and Mark went out with some of his friends.

Tối qua, Mary về nhà mẹ cô ấy còn Mark thì đi ra ngoài với các bạn của anh ấy.

I knew he didn't know the answer, so I didn't ask.

Tôi biết là anh ta không có câu trả lời nên tôi không hỏi.

• Chúng ta đều thấy rằng trong câu ghép, liên từ kết hợp đóng một vai trò rất quan trọng, vậy hãy cùng tìm hiểu xem liên từ kết hợp gồm có những từ nào.

2. Liên từ kết hợp trong câu ghép

Trong tiếng Anh có 7 liên từ kết hợp, đó là: **for, and, nor, but, or, yet, so**

Chúng ta ghi nhớ bằng cụm FANBOYS (các chữ cái đầu của các từ).

F	A	N	B	O	Y	S
For	And	Nor	But	Or	Yet	So

❖ For - bởi vì

Liên từ for được sử dụng để nêu ra lí do (reason).

Ex: She likes eating fruits, for they are good for her health.

Cô ấy thích ăn hoa quả vì chúng tốt cho sức khỏe.

I don't believe his words, for he used to lie to me.

Tôi không tin lời anh ta vì anh ta đã từng nói dối tôi.

❖ And - và

Liên từ and được dùng để diễn tả sự liên kết, bổ sung thông tin (addition).

Ex: He was tired, and he had a headache.

Anh ấy mệt và anh ấy bị đau đầu.

American Idol began in 2002, and it quickly gained popularity.

Chương trình Thần tượng âm nhạc Mỹ bắt đầu vào năm 2002 và nó nhanh chóng được ưa thích sau đó.

❖ Nor - cũng không

Liên từ nor được sử dụng để diễn tả ý phủ định (negation).

Với cách dùng của nor lưu ý sử dụng đảo ngữ ở mệnh đề thứ hai.

Chúng ta không nói: *I can't go to Linh's birthday party, nor Lucy can.*

Câu đúng sẽ là *I can't go to Linh's birthday party, nor can Lucy.*

Ex: She was not in the back yard, nor was she in the kitchen.

Cô ấy không ở sân sau, cũng không có ở trong bếp.

❖ But - nhưng

But diễn tả sự trái ngược, thông tin sau khác với thông tin trước (contrast).

Ex: This house is big, but that house is bigger.

Căn nhà này to nhưng căn nhà kia to hơn.

I like Pop music, but my brother likes Rock.

Tôi thích nhạc Pop nhưng anh trai tôi lại thích Rock.

❖ **Or - hoặc là**

Liên từ Or dùng để nêu lên sự lựa chọn (choice).

Ex: You can take a bus, or you can ride a bike to the cinema.

Bạn có thể bắt xe buýt hoặc bạn có thể đi xe đạp tới rạp chiếu phim.

You have to get up early, or you'll be late for school.

Con phải dậy sớm hoặc con sẽ bị đi học muộn.

❖ **Yet - nhưng**

Yet nghĩa là "tuy nhiên", "mặc dù vậy", "ấy vậy mà", và dùng để diễn tả sự tương phản (contrary outcome).

Ex: She is quiet, yet she is an outgoing girl.

Cô ấy khá trầm tính nhưng cô ấy là một cô gái hòa đồng.

She said she wouldn't come, yet I still waited for her.

Cô ấy nói cô ấy không đến nhưng tôi vẫn chờ cô ấy.

❖ **So - vì thế, cho nên**

Liên từ So dùng để diễn tả kết quả (result).

Ex: This word is strange, so you can look it up in the dictionary.

Từ này khá lạ nên bạn có thể tra nó trong từ điển.

It was raining, so we did not go out.

Trời đang mưa, vì vậy chúng tôi không đi ra ngoài.

II. ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN THỂ CÓ “TO” VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN THỂ KHÔNG CÓ “TO”.

1. To-infinitives and bare infinitives

a. To-infinitives

Verbs + to-infinitives

Chúng ta sử dụng động từ nguyên thể có to sau một số động từ như trong bảng dưới đây:

Agree	Begin	Decide	Determine
đồng ý	bắt đầu	quyết định	quyết tâm
Expect	Forget	Hesitate	Hope
mong đợi	quên	do dự	hi vọng
Intend	Learn	Offer	Plan
dự định	học	đưa ra đề nghị	lên kế hoạch

Prefer	Promise	Refuse	Tend
thích	hứa	từ chối	có xu hướng
Try	Seem	Want	Wish
cố gắng	dường như	muốn	ước

Ex: He began to post his homemade videos on the Internet in 2010.

Anh ấy bắt đầu đăng video tự làm làm lên mạng vào năm 2010.

Julia is planning to travel abroad next month.

Julia dự định đi du lịch nước ngoài vào tháng tới.

b. Verbs + O + to-infinitives

Một số động từ đi kèm tân ngữ và theo sau bởi động từ nguyên thể có to, bao gồm:

advise	allow	cause	ask
khuyên	cho phép	yêu cầu	ây ra
convince	encourage	expect	force
thuyết phục	khuyến khích	mong đợi	ép buộc
hire	instruct	invite	need
thuê	hướng dẫn	mời	cần
persuade	require	teach	want
thuyết phục	yêu cầu	dạy	muốn

Ex: She invited me to join her birthday party.

Cô ấy mời tôi đến bữa tiệc sinh nhật của cô ấy,

They don't allow me to smoke in this room.

Họ không cho phép tôi hút thuốc trong phòng này.

His parents expect him to win the singing contest.

Bố mẹ anh ấy mong anh ấy chiến thắng trong cuộc thi hát.

My father encourages me to learn to play the piano.

Bố tôi động viên tôi học chơi đàn piano.

c. To-infinitives in structures

Một số cấu trúc có sử dụng động từ nguyên thể có to bao gồm:

Cấu trúc 1

enough to V

- Cấu trúc **enough to V** có nghĩa là **đủ để làm gì**

Ex: He is strong enough to lift this bag.

Anh ấy đủ khỏe để nhắc được chiếc túi này.

I don't have enough money to buy the ticket.

Tôi không có đủ tiền để mua vé.

Cấu trúc 2

whether to V

- Cấu trúc **whether to V** có nghĩa là **liệu có làm hay không**

Ex: I don't know whether to phone her or not.

Tôi không biết liệu có nên gọi điện cho cô ấy hay không.

I can't decide whether to buy a ticket online or at the box office.

Tôi không thể quyết định được liệu mua vé trực tuyến hay mua ở phòng vé.

Cấu trúc 3

It's + adjective + to V

- Cấu trúc **It's + adjective + to V** có nghĩa là **Thế nào khi làm gì.**
- Động từ nguyên thể có to sử dụng khi đứng sau một số tính từ như *dangerous* (nguy hiểm), *important* (quan trọng), *easy* (dễ dàng), *difficult* (khó khăn)...

Ex: It's dangerous to ride a motorcycle without a helmet.

Thật nguy hiểm khi đi xe máy mà không đội mũ bảo hiểm.

It's easy to book tickets online in advance.

Đặt vé trực tuyến trước rất dễ dàng.

Cấu trúc 4

to be about + to V

- Cấu trúc **to be about + to V** có nghĩa là **sắp làm gì**

Ex: They're about to start.

Họ sắp sửa khởi hành.

We're about to perform live on stage to a television audience.

Chúng tôi sắp biểu diễn trực tiếp trên sân khấu trước khán giả truyền hình.

2. Bare infinitives

a. Verbs + 0 + bare infinitives

Các trường hợp động từ sau đây chúng ta sẽ dùng với động từ nguyên thể không có *to*

feel

find

have

cảm thấy

nhận thấy, thấy

có, nhờ

hear

help

notice

nghe thấy	giúp	để ý thấy
make	let	see
làm cho, khiến	để, cho	nhìn thấy

Ex: Please let me know the reason why you don't listen to me.

Nói cho mẹ biết tại sao con không chịu nghe lời mẹ.

This song made all the audiences cry.

Bài hát này khiến tất cả khán giả đều khóc.

My friend helped me buy Taylor Swift's new CD.

Bạn tôi mua giúp tôi chiếc đĩa CD mới của Taylor Swift.

I see the boy in yellow kick the ball.

Tôi nhìn thấy cậu bé mặc áo màu vàng đá quả bóng.

I'll have Peter fix my electric bike.

Tôi sẽ nhờ Peter sửa cái xe điện của tôi.

b. Modal verbs + bare infinitives

Sau các động từ khuyết thiếu như *can, could, should, may, might, ...* chúng ta cũng sử dụng động từ nguyên thể không có to.

Ex: You should go to the supermarket to buy more food.

Bạn nên đi siêu thị để mua thêm đồ ăn.

He could play the piano when he was five.

Anh ấy có thể chơi đàn piano khi mới 5 tuổi.

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>g</u> uest | B. man <u>a</u> ge | C. prod <u>i</u> gy | D. teen <u>a</u> ger |
| 2. A. dem <u>a</u> nding | B. nu <u>a</u> nce | C. ball <u>a</u> de | D. polon <u>a</u> ise |
| 3. A. <u>w</u> altz | B. franch <u>i</u> se | C. patrio <u>t</u> ism | D. compos <u>e</u> r |
| 4. A. <u>s</u> onata | B. phenom <u>e</u> non | C. noctu <u>r</u> ne | D. polon <u>a</u> ise |
| 5. A. ach <u>i</u> evement | B. ch <u>a</u> rity | C. ch <u>o</u> rus | D. franch <u>i</u> se |
| 6. A. ren <u>o</u> wned | B. talen <u>t</u> ed | C. gift <u>e</u> d | D. learn <u>e</u> d |

II. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. s <u>i</u> ngle | B. m <u>u</u> sic | C. cont <u>e</u> st | D. relea <u>s</u> e |
| 2. A. plat <u>i</u> num | B. son <u>a</u> ta | C. an <u>t</u> hem | D. sm <u>a</u> sh |

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 3. A. <u>compose</u> | B. <u>purchase</u> | C. <u>release</u> | D. <u>increase</u> |
| 4. A. <u>version</u> | B. <u>process</u> | C. <u>modest</u> | D. <u>contestant</u> |
| 5. A. <u>instrument</u> | B. <u>platinum</u> | C. <u>debut</u> | D. <u>album</u> |
| 6. A. <u>eliminate</u> | B. <u>nominate</u> | C. <u>originate</u> | D. <u>passionate</u> |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

- They are producing more and more _____ in the USA and they will soon spread to all parts of the world.
A. real TV shows B. reality TV shows C. actuality TV shows
- Ho Chi Minh has been considered one of the _____ of the world.
A. culture figures B. cultural figures C. cultural images
- The boy showed his talent for playing the piano at the age of five, so he was considered an _____.
A. infant prodigy B. infant artist C. infant talent
- The first episode of the film is going to be _____ next Sunday.
A. aired B. announced C. transmitted
- Many folk songs which _____ in rural areas are still favored nowadays.
A. resulted B. proceeded C. originated
- Nicholas Sparks is a _____ author. People love and respect him for his novels and personalities.
A. notorious B. renowned C. remarked
- Four artists have been _____ for the prize, but only one can win it.
A. offered B. decided C. nominated
- His song quickly became a _____ among Vietnamese young people.
A. phenomenon B. phenomenal C. situation
- Trinh Cong Son is a _____ composer in Vietnam. Many Vietnamese people can sing his songs.
A. prominent B. famous C. Both A & B are correct.
- The young singer has _____ several singing competitions, but she still desires to compete in The Voice of Vietnam this year.
A. sung B. conquered C. achieved

II. Choose the right words to complete the sentences.

inspirational	celebrity panel	conquer
audition	patriotism	demanding

- It's not easy to _____ conquer _____ such a big competition.

2. The ____ **celebrity panel** ____ has to give comments for each contestant after their performances.
3. You have to pass the ____ **audition** ____ in order to advance to the semi-finals of the Idol programme.
4. His pieces of music are becoming more and more technically ____ **demanding** ____.
5. I love ____ **inspirational** ____ songs because they give enthusiasm and ideas to what I do.
6. A majority of his songs which praise ____ **patriotism** ____ were written during wartime.

III. Match the words with the corresponding definitions.

- | | |
|----------------|--|
| 1. biography | a. an event for people to compete to find out the best person at something |
| c | |
| 2. competition | b. certification for an album which sells one million units |
| a | |
| 3. platinum | c. a story of one's life written by another person |
| b | |
| 4. box office | d. a place where people can come to buy tickets for admission to an event |
| d | |

IV. Choose the words/ phrases that are SAME in meaning to the underlined parts.

1. The band's debut album was a smash hit.
 A. great success B. failure C. disappointment
2. The young singer is also passionate about composing.
 A. good at B. enthusiastic C. indifferent
3. Some contestants are truly talented and make relentless efforts.
 A. hard-working B. incompetent C. gifted
4. In this round, the contestants have to form pairs and choose a song to perform with their partners.
 A. supporters B. competitors C. spectators
5. This TV series has different versions all over the world.
 A. originals B. copies C. categories
6. His latest single was released last month. Many people had been waiting for it.
 A. produced B. finished C. launched

V. Choose the options that best fit the blanks.

1. David had to practice hard to compete with other contestants, for it was a highly ____ round.
 A. competitive B. passionate C. eliminate D. competitor

2. The Idol program ____ consists of auditions, semi-finals and finals.
A. franchise B. step C. round **D. process**
3. Can you play any ____? - Yes. I can play the flute and the guitar.
A. musical tools B. pieces of music **C. musical instruments** D. musical devices
4. Two of the four contestants will be ____ after tonight's show.
A. composed B. removed **C. eliminated** D. terminated
5. Bach made significant ____ in classical music.
A. innovations B. creativity C. strangeness D. newness
6. That company ____ her into signing a five-year contract.
A. deceived B. pretended C. made D. defrauded
7. What are the major ____ of that famous composer?
A. smash hits B. biographies C. rating lists **D. achievements**
8. American Idol was ____ in 2002 and soon became a phenomenal entertainment series.
A. launched B. aired C. published **D. Both A & B are correct.**

VI. Choose the options that best fit the blanks.

1. The boys are playing games, ____ the girls are watching TV.
A. so B. nor **C. and**
2. I tried my best in the final test, ____ the result was not as good as I expected.
A. but B. so C. for
3. He lost the key, ____ he couldn't get into the house.
A. yet B. or **C. so**
4. She loves comedies, ____ her husband is interested in action films.
A. for **B. yet** C. or
5. You must do well in the test, ____ you will not graduate.
A. so **B. or** C. for
6. Pop music is so popular, ____ the melody is simple and memorable.
A. for B. so C. and
7. I should practice more for the competition, ____ my health hasn't been excellent recently.
A. and B. so **C. but**
8. You can go to the movies with me, ____ you can go to the concert alone.
A. and **B. or** C. so

VII. Decide whether the following sentences are Correct or Incorrect.

1. He was a gifted song-writer, but he had to suffer poor health.

Correct

2. Katherine doesn't like the main characters of that movie, nor she likes its plot.

Incorrect

3. Pitt has just put two new batteries in the toy car, yet it is not running.

Correct

4. Mary was tired, yet we stopped for a rest.

Incorrect

5. Maybe it is caused by human error, and maybe it is totally a coincidence.

Incorrect

6. You've been waiting for too long. You should go home, and I will ask Sally to talk to you later.

Correct

7. I stayed in San Francisco for two years, so that I can recommend some really nice sites.

Incorrect

8. Because my mother is busy this week, so my father is going to my cousin's wedding.

Incorrect

VIII. Fill in the blanks with coordinating conjunctions:

1. Daniel tried to read a book in Thai, ____ **but** / **yet** ____ it was too difficult.

2. Will you pick me up after work, ____ **or** ____ will I take the bus?

3. My grandfather is quite old, ____ **yet** / **but** ____ he exercises more regularly than I do.

4. My holiday will be an all-inclusive one, ____ **for** ____ I don't know much about the city.

5. Did he design the house himself, ____ **or** ____ did he have it designed by an architect?

6. My mother gave me some money, ____ **and** ____ she also gave me a new dress for Tet.

7. She never came to see him, ____ **nor** ____ did she leave him any money.

8. I had failed the driving test once, ____ **so** ____ I was very nervous yesterday

IX. Choose the best compound sentence for each sentence pair.

1. The boy didn't like to go to school. He went anyway.

A. The boy didn't like to go to school, so he went anyway.

B. The boy hated to go to school, yet he went anyway.

C. The boy hated to go to school, and he went anyway.

2. I am planning to visit Korea. I have started to save some money.

A. I am planning to visit Korea, but I have started to save some money.

- B. I have a plan to visit Korea, nor have I started to save some money.
C. I have made a plan to visit Korea, so I have started to save some money.
3. The first season of Vietnam Idol aired on VTV in 2007. The fifth season aired in 2013.
A. The first season of Vietnam Idol aired on VTV in 2007, and the fifth one aired in 2013.
B. The first season of Vietnam Idol aired on VTV in 2007, but the fifth season aired in 2013.
C. The first season of Vietnam Idol aired on VTV in 2007, for the fifth season aired in 2013.
4. My uncle can play volleyball. He can't play basketball.
A. My uncle can play football, so he can play basketball.
B. My uncle can play volleyball, nor can he play basketball.
C. My uncle can play volleyball, but he can't play basketball.
5. Let's go to the swimming pool. It's so hot today.
A. Let's go to the swimming pool, for it's so hot today.
B. Let's go to the swimming pool, so it's very hot today.
C. Let's go to the swimming pool, and it's so hot today.
6. You can call the manager directly. You can email him.
A. You can call the manager directly, or you can email him.
B. You can call the manager directly, for you can email him.
C. You can email the manager, so you can call him directly.
7. She sang beautifully. At the end of her performance, she got a big round of applause from the audience.
A. She sang beautifully, yet at the end of her performance, she got a big round of applause from the audience.
B. She sang beautifully, for at the end of her performance, she got a big round of applause from the audience.
C. She sang beautifully, so at the end of her performance, she got a big round of applause from the audience.
8. It is raining very hard. The children are still playing football.
A. It is raining very hard, for the children are still playing football.
B. It is raining very hard, yet the children are still playing football.
C. It's raining very hard, so the children are still playing football.

X. Determine ONE wrong/ redundant word in each sentence.

1. She doesn't like the car toy, nor does she likes the Teddy bear.

_____ **like** _____

2. There were no online tickets left, so that we had to come to the box office.

_____ **bỏ** _____
_____ **“that”** _____

3. Turn off all the lights and the TV, or lock the door before you leave.

_____ **and** _____

4. She'd like to know what her mistakes are, so she wants to improve her pronunciation.

_____ **for** _____

5. For this computer is broken, and you can use that tablet.

_____ **bỏ** _____
_____ **“and”** _____

6. That man looks like a kind guy you can count on, and he isn't. He always gives others a hand if he can.

_____ **is** _____

7. You mustn't go to the box office to buy tickets, for they don't sell tickets online.

_____ **must** _____

8. The actor has been nominated for 10 Grammy Awards, yet he has won eight. That's a great achievement.

_____ **and** _____

XI. Choose the options that best fit the blanks.

1. They refuse _____ the donation from the government.

- A. receiving B. to receive C. receive

2. The Bakers hire a young man _____ on their farm during the harvest.

- A. work B. to work C. working

3. I heard someone _____ outside when I was watching TV.

- A. to fall B. fall C. fell
4. The boy was able _____ the piano when he was small.
- A. play B. playing C. to play
5. He advises Julia _____ to the dentist.
- A. to go B. go C. going
6. He does not seem _____ passion for this job.
- A. have B. having C. to have
7. Would you like _____ with music?
- A. dance B. to dance C. dancing
8. Sam wanted me _____ there early in the morning.
- A. come B. coming C. to come
9. Have you ever expected _____ an astronaut?
- A. to become B. become C. becoming
10. The heavy rain forced us _____ the match last week.
- A. delay B. to delay C. delaying

XII. Give the correct forms of the verbs.

Farmer Pitt met Jane when they were both young. He determined to ask Jane (1. marry) **to marry** him. After getting married, Pitt tried (2. get) **to get** up early every morning to milk the cow so that Jane could sleep late. Everything went smoothly until they decided (3. increase) **to increase** their profits by buying some hens. A fox came and tried to eat their hens. Jane persuaded her husband (4. buy) **to buy** a gun, but this couldn't (5. help) **help**, for the fox was so fast. They even let the fox (6. eat) **eat** other foods, but this didn't seem (7. work) **to work**. Eventually, they asked around for help, and one of the neighbors advised them (8. try) **to try** putting tiger dung on the ground. They hoped that tiger dung would make the fox (9. stay) **stay** away from their only chicken left. Pitt had his wife (10. buy) **buy** some tiger dung at a nearby shop, and they never saw the fox again.

XIII. Use to-infinitives or bare infinitives to complete the following sentences.

1. It began **to rain** (rain) when I was in London last Saturday.
2. We've decided **to attend** (attend) the music contest at the end of this year.
3. They intended **to visit** (visit) Paris last year but they didn't have enough time.
4. Don't let him **know** (know) about his mother's illness now.
5. Someone saw him **go** (go) to a restaurant with his friends.

6. This song makes everybody _____ **feel** _____ (feel) comfortable.
7. It's dangerous _____ **to go** _____ (go) out alone late at night.
8. My father promised _____ **to buy** _____ (buy) me a comic book on my 9th birthday.

XIV. Determine whether the following sentences are Correct or Incorrect.

1. Please don't hesitate to call me when you arrive in Frankfurt.

Correct

2. My parents didn't encourage me studying Music at university.

Incorrect

3. Blake didn't invite her boyfriend to come to her graduation ceremony.

Correct

4. The clerk required me signing in the form before letting me in.

Incorrect

5. He didn't deserve to be treated by the locals like that.

Correct

6. It's impolite not to take off your shoes before stepping into a Japanese house.

Correct

7. Jimmy forgot to lock the house, so it was broken into.

Correct

8. She is mature enough discuss her family's problems with her parents.

Incorrect

9. Anna learnt how making cakes from her grandmother.

Incorrect

10. I didn't have enough money buy the coat, so I just bought a sweater.

Incorrect

XV. Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs: *leave, change, know, come, reveal, finish, feed, share, refuse, return*

1. Nothing can make Alex _____ **change** _____ her mind now.
2. Please let me _____ **know** _____ your decision as soon as possible.
3. It's customary _____ **to refuse** _____ a gift from at least once or twice before finally accepting in Japan.
4. Hurry up! The train is about _____ **to leave** _____ in five minutes.
5. She didn't know whether _____ **to come** _____ to her friend's wedding or not.
6. There are not enough candies _____ **to share** _____ among all the children here.
7. I saw my little sister _____ **feed** _____ the dog yesterday.

8. I determine _____ **to finish** _____ all my homework today.
9. You can use my car but you must promise _____ **to return** _____ it before Friday.
10. My younger sister is not reliable enough _____ **to reveal** _____ my secrets to her.

C. READING

I. Read the passage and do the tasks below

Based on the original *The Voice of Holland*, *The Voice of America*, or sooner *The Voice*, officially aired on NBC on April 26, 2011 aiming to find new singing talent and soon became a big hit.

The Voice process includes Blinds Audition, Battles Rounds, Knockout Rounds, and the final live performance phase. Only those fifteen and over are eligible for the competition. There are four coaches, themselves well-known performing artists, who critique contestants' performances and form their own teams of contestants and give them guidance through the rest of the season. Coaches also have the power to decide on which contestants to advance in the next rounds. One celebrity key advisor gives assistance to the coaches and their teams during the preparation process.

The coaches and the television audience have equal power to decide who moves on to the final four phase. However, the winner is determined by votes from the television audience by online voting on the official website, SMS text and iTunes stores purchases of the contestants' performances. The declared winner receives US\$ 100, 000 and a record contract with Universal Music Group.

As an incredible success in both Holland and the U.S., The Voice has been franchised out to many other countries in the world, and has been a big rival to the *Idol* franchise.

Part 1. Choose the appropriate meaning for each word from the text.

1. *to air*

A. to broadcast on television

B. to be produced as a TV program

2. *a big hit*

A. a successful record of a song

B. a great success

3. *a season*

A. a series of a TV program

B. a TV contest

4. *process*

A. a method of doing something

B. a series of action

5. *a live performance*

A. a performance made when people are watching, not recorded

B. a performance recorded and posted on the Internet

6. *television audience*

A. people who come and watch directly

B. people who watch through the TV screen

7. *to franchise*

A. to vote for a favourite contestant

B. to sell the formula to others

Part 2. Choose the best answers to the following questions.

1. What is TRUE about The Voice program?

A. It originated in Holland.
on NBC.

B. The Voice of Holland first aired

C. It was a failure in Holland.

2. What is a requirement for contestants?

A. Contestants must be at least 18 years old.

B. Contestants must be at least 13

C. Contestants must be at least 15 years old.

3. Who decide on the winner of each season?

A. Coaches and television audience
advisor

B. Coaches and the celebrity key

C. Television audience

4. By what means can people vote for their favourite contestant?

A. Text messages, internet, and post letters

B. Text messages and online buying of the contestants' performances

C. Youtube views and online voting on the official website

5. What is the prize for winning a The Voice season?

A. A large amount of money and becoming a The Voice coach

B. A record contract worth US\$ 100,000

C. A large amount of money and chance to work with a music company

II. Choose the best answer to fill in the blank.

WHAT IS "POP" MUSIC?

It has always been difficult for me to decide (1) ____ "popular music" means music written for the people or it is simple music that the people like. The same problem of definition exists with jazz. So (2) ____ different types of music have been called jazz at one time or (3) ____ that is hard to say what it really is. Jazz has always been considered (4) ____ black music but when I first took an interest in it I used to hear white bands playing music that was like Louis Armstrong's in the 1920s. I found out (5) ____ that they learn to do this by playing his records

over and over again until their style was (6) ____ to his for them to imitate him. Since then white singers (7) ____ Bob Dylan have rediscovered their own folk tradition, instead of borrowing from black roots. But the main changes since 1960 have been social and technical. One is that (8) ____ have more money to spend on records at an earlier age than they used to, so Tin Pan Alley, the "pop music" industry, aims at the teenage audience. Another is that electronic equipment has developed (9) ____ extent that technicians are now capable of mixing sound to produce recordings that are quite different from a live performance. But the real problem with "pop" music is that Tin Pan Alley has always worked against (10) ____ a genuine music of the people. It takes everything original and natural out of it and replaces it with cheap commercial imitation. As the American folk singer, Woody Guthrie said: "They've always preferred the second-rate song. They've never wanted to play the good one."

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. what | B. how | C. whether | D. when |
| 2. A. much | B. a lot of | C. many | D. plenty |
| 3. A. the other | B. the others | C. others | D. another |
| 4. A. to be | B. being | C. as being | D. that it is |
| 5. A. presently | B. afterwards | C. after | D. soon |
| 6. A. so close | B. close enough | C. too close | D. enough close |
| 7. A. like | B. as | C. for instance | D. for example |
| 8. A. the youths | B. young people | C. the youth | D. youngs |
| 9. A. in so great | B. to so great | C. in such an | D. to such an |
| 10. A. its being | B. it to be | C. being it | D. that it was |

III. Choose the sentence which is closest in meaning with the given one.

- Mrs Sally asked the students to hand in their assignments.
 - Mrs Sally gave the class an assignment.
 - Mrs Sally gave the students a hand with their assignments.
 - Mrs Sally asked the students to give their assignments to her.
 - Mrs Sally asked the students to raise their hands if they wanted to ask a question.
- Because of working hard, she fell ill.

A. She worked so hard that she fell ill.	B. She didn't work so she fell ill.
C. She was too ill to work hard.	D. She wasn't ill although she worked hard.
- It's been fourteen years since I last saw my brother.

A. I didn't see my brother 14 years ago.	B. I haven't seen my brother for 14 years.
--	--

- C. I see my brother once every 14 years. D. My brother is 14 years old.
4. Jack is afraid he'll gain weight if he stops smoking.
- A. Jack is afraid of smoking.
 - B. Jack doesn't realize the dangers of smoking.
 - C. Jack is afraid he'll become fat if he gives up smoking.
 - D. Jack is afraid he'll lose weight if he doesn't smoke.
5. Fewer people came to the meeting than we had expected.
- A. Too many people came to the meeting.
 - B. There were more people at the meeting than we had expected.
 - C. We had expected more people to come to the meeting.
 - D. There were not enough seats for all people as we had expected.
6. I should have studied last night but I was too tired.
- A. I studied last night because I was bored.
 - B. I studied last night because I had to.
 - C. I tried to study last night, but material was too hard.
 - D. I couldn't study last night because I was very tired.
7. Although Mr Pike was seriously ill, he still composed nice pieces of music.
- A. Mr Pike's pieces of music were very serious.
 - B. Mr Pike didn't compose any nice pieces of music because he was seriously ill.
 - C. Despite his serious illness, Mr Pike still composed nice pieces of music.
 - D. Mr Pike were too ill to compose music.
8. The coffee was strong, but it didn't keep us awake.
- A. The coffee was strong and it could keep us awake.
 - B. We were kept awake because the coffee was strong.
 - C. The coffee wasn't strong enough to keep us awake.
 - D. The coffee was so hot that it didn't keep us awake.
9. He can hardly understand this matter because he's too young.
- A. This matter is too hard for him to understand.
 - B. He's young, but he can understand this matter.
 - C. The matter was difficult but he can understand it.
 - D. Hardly can he understand this matter because he's too young.
10. My mother had the house decorated.

- A. My mother had someone decorate the house.
B. My mother had to decorate the house.
C. The house is going to be decorated by my mother.
D. My mother had just decorated the house.
11. "Could you hold the line, please?" said the operator.
A. The operator told me to stop my call. B. The operator told me to speak.
C. The operator told me to wait. D. The operator told me to call back later.
12. If you don't understand this word, look it up in the dictionary.
A. If you know this word, tell me.
B. If you don't know this word, I'll tell you.
C. If my dictionary hasn't got the word, I'll find another one.
D. If you don't know this word, find it in the dictionary.
13. She hates shopping in large supermarkets and prefers buying food in small shops or street markets.
A. She never goes shopping.
B. She often buys food in the supermarket.
C. She often buys food in small shops and street markets.
D. She goes shopping every day.
14. Surprisingly for an American, he doesn't drink any coke.
A. He always drinks coke. B. A lot of American people drink coke.
C. He is a surprise for the Americans. D. He sometimes drinks coke.
15. Just breathing the air in Mexico City is the same as smoking 40 cigarettes a day.
A. An average person in Mexico City smokes 40 cigarettes a day.
B. Taking in the air in this city is good for your health.
C. Taking in the air in this city has the same effect as smoking 40 cigarettes.
D. People in Mexico never smoke.

D. WRITING

I. Write a brief biography about a famous artist.

My Tam was born in 1981 in Da Nang. She is a famous pop singer in Vietnam. She had a passion for music and started learning musical instruments at an early age. Her best-known songs are *Hoa Mi Toc Nau*, *Uoc Gi*, and *Cay Dan Sinh Vien* which became an

iconic song in the 2000s among Vietnamese university students. My Tam won the bronze medal at the Asian Music Festival held in Shanghai in 2000. One year later, she graduated from the Conservatory of Ho Chi Minh City with flying colors. She was also the first Vietnamese singer to participate in the Asian Song Festival in Seoul, Korea. My Tam is one of the most famous and influential pop singers in Vietnam and still maintains a passionate and active performing career.

II. Rewrite the following sentences without changing their meaning, using the given words.

1. If the plane leaves on time, we'll arrive in Paris at noon.
Should _____ **the plane leave on time, we'll arrive in Paris at noon** _____
2. They saw two men running out of the bank with big bags on their shoulders.
Two men _____ **were seen running out of the bank with big bags on their shoulders** _____
3. "I saw the movie you recommended last night," he said to her.
He told her that _____ **he had seen the she had recommended the night before** _____
4. Sam eats a lot every day. However, she still looks rawboned.
Even though Sam _____ **eats a lot every day, she still looks rawboned** _____
5. I didn't want to disturb him so I didn't call him.
So as _____ **not to disturb him, I didn't call him** _____
6. It's such an expensive television that we can't buy it.
This television _____ **is too expensive for us to buy** _____
7. I usually listen to music when I am stressed and tired.
I am used _____ **to listening to music when I am stressed and tired** _____
8. We seldom go to the beach in winter.
Seldom _____ **do we go to the beach in winter** _____
9. He didn't spill coffee on the laptop.
It wasn't him _____ **that spilled coffee on the laptop** _____
10. If you practice more, you'll play better.
The more _____ **you practice, the better you'll play** _____

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.

1. A. architect B. parachute C. school D. psychology

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| 2. A. <u>treason</u> | B. <u>reason</u> | C. <u>season</u> | D. <u>jealous</u> |
| 3. A. <u>worked</u> | B. <u>laughed</u> | C. <u>hoped</u> | D. <u>needed</u> |
| 4. A. <u>erupt</u> | B. <u>humour</u> | C. <u>UFO</u> | D. <u>communicate</u> |
| 5. A. <u>author</u> | B. <u>other</u> | C. <u>there</u> | D. <u>they</u> |

II. Choose the word whose main stress pattern is not the same as that of the others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| 1. A. friendly | B. extra | C. <u>along</u> | D. orphanage |
| 2. A. <u>interesting</u> | B. surprising | C. amusing | D. successful |
| 3. A. understand | B. engineer | C. <u>benefit</u> | D. Vietnamese |
| 4. A. paper | B. <u>tonight</u> | C. lecture | D. story |
| 5. A. important | B. community | C. <u>organize</u> | D. disease |

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

I. Choose the most suitable word or phrase A, B, C or D to complete each sentence.

- _____ scientists have observed increased pollution in the water supply.
A. Late B. Later C. Latter D. Lately
- You will have to _____ your holiday if you are too ill to travel.
A. put off B. cut down C. put out D. put up
- It is recommended that he _____ this course.
A. took B. takes C. take D. taking
- Various societies define _____ in many rather complex ways.
A. that is successful B. what success is C. that success is D. what is success
- Don't set off fireworks too closely to your house, _____?
A. do you B. don't you C. will you D. have you
- He was the first person _____ the fire.
A. discover B. to discover C. discovering D. discovered
- John: "I didn't pass my driving test".
Anna: " _____"
A. Better luck next time B. Fine, thanks C. Congratulation D. That was nice of them
- Our friends have lived in Paris _____ 2002.
A. for B. since C. in D. about
- The government stopped the local companies from importing fake milk powder _____ of public health.
A. in the interest B. to the best C. for the attention D. on the safe side

10. Mr. Vo Van Kiet, _____ was our former Prime Minister, was born in Vinh Long.
 A. that B. whose **C. who** D. whom
11. One problem for teacher is that each student has his/her own _____ needs.
 A. separate B. divided **C. individual** D. distinctive
12. I knew my father would discipline me for my bad behaviour.
 A. reward B. reprove C. congratulate **D. punish**
13. My father still hasn't really recovered from the death of my mother.
 A. looked after B. taken after C. gone off **D. got over**
14. _____ broken into while we were away on holiday.
A. We had our house B. Thieves had our house C. It was our house D. They have
15. _____ to the national park before, she was amazed to see the geyser.
 A. Being not **B. Not having been** C. Have not been D. Having not been
16. Nursing, teaching and engineering are _____.
 A. works B. lines C. titles **D. professions**
17. I've looked _____ my book everywhere but I can't find it.
A. for B. after C. at D. in
18. Joe has three sisters. He wishes he _____ a brother.
 A. have B. will have C. has **D. had**
19. He asked me _____.
 A. where did I live **B. where I lived** C. where do you live D. where do I live
20. _____ is extremely dangerous.
 A. At very high speeds driving cars **C. Driving cars at very high speeds**
 D. Cars driving at very high speeds B. Cars at very high speeds driving

II. Error identification.

1. It was not until the match ended that everybody had left the stadium.
 A B C **D**
2. The plants in their garden looks unhealthy because they haven't had enough sunlight.
 A **B** C D
3. I'm having a day off today so I decide to take the car to the garage to have it repair.
 A B C **D**
4. The astronauts didn't walk far on the Moon if they were hampered by the thick dust.

A

B

C

D

5. Some animals need more highlier developed sense cells than man to survive in their struggle for existence.

A

B

C

D

C. READING

I. Read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C, or D, best fits each space.

THE HISTORY OF FILM

The world first film was shown in 1895 by two French brothers, Louis and Auguste Lumiere. Although it only ____ (1) of short, simple scenes, people loved it and films have ____ (2) popular ever since. The first films were silent, with titles on the screen to ____ (3) the story.

Soon the public had ____ (4) favourite actors and actresses and, in this ____ (5) the first film stars

appeared. In 1927, the first “talkie”, a film with sound, was shown and from then on, the public ____ (6) only accept this kind of film.

Further improvements continued, particularly in American, ____ (7) produced 95% of all films. With the arrival of television in the 1950s, ____ (8) people went to see films, but in ____ (9) years cinema audiences have grown again. More countries have started to produce films that influence film-making and there are currently ____ (10) national film industries.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. A. consisted | B. contained | C. belonged | D. held |
| 2. A. gone | B. been | C. made | D. kept |
| 3. A. join | B. read | C. explain | D. perform |
| 4. A. your | B. his | C. our | D. their |
| 5. A. reason | B. way | C. method | D. result |
| 6. A. should | B. would | C. might | D. will |
| 7. A. who | B. where | C. when | D. which |
| 8. A. other | B. each | C. fewer | D. any |
| 9. A. recent | B. now | C. modern | D. present |
| 10. A. many | B. lots | C. much | D. plenty |

II. Read the passage and choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D for each question.

Herman Melville, an American author best known today for his novel Moby Dick, was actually more popular during his lifetime for some of his other works. He traveled extensively and used the knowledge gained during his travels as the **basis** for his early novels. In 1837, at the age of eighteen, Melville signed as a cabin boy on a merchant ship that was to sail from his Massachusetts home to Liverpool, England. His experiences on this trip served as a basis for the

novel *Redburn* (1849). In 1841 Melville set out on a whaling ship headed for the South Seas. After jumping ship in Tahiti, he wandered around the islands of Tahiti and Moorea. This South Sea island sojourn was a backdrop to the novel *Omoo* (1847). After three years away from home, Melville joined up with a U.S naval **frigate** that was returning to the eastern United States around Cape Horn. The novel *White-Jacket* (1850) describes this lengthy voyage a navy seaman.

With the publication of these early adventure novels, Melville developed a strong and loyal following among readers eager for his tales of exotic places and situations. However, in 1851, with the publication of *Moby Dick*, Melville's popularity started to diminish. *Moby Dick*, in one level the saga of the hunt for the great white whale, was also a heavily symbolic allegory of the heroic struggle of humanity against the universe. The public was not ready for Melville's literary **metamorphosis** from romantic adventure to philosophical symbolism. It is ironic that the novel that served to diminish Melville's popularity during his lifetime is the one for which he is best known today.

1. The main subject of the passage is _____.
A. Melville's travels
B. The popularity of Melville's novels
C. Melville's personal background
D. *Moby Dick*
2. According to the passage, Melville's early novels were _____.
A. published while he was travelling
B. completely fictional
C. all about his work on whaling ships
D. based on his travels
3. In what year did Melville's book about his experience as a cabin boy appear?
A. 1837
B. 1841
C. 1847
D. 1849
4. The word "**basis**" in line 4 is closest in meaning to _____.
A. foundation
B. message
C. bottom
D. theme
5. The passage implies that Melville stayed in Tahiti because _____.
A. He had unofficially left his ship
B. He was on leave while his ship was in port
C. He had finished his term of duty
D. He had received permission to take a vacation in Tahiti
6. A "**frigate**" in line 8 is probably _____.
A. an office
B. a ship
C. a troop
D. a train
7. How did the publication of *Moby Dick* affect Melville's popularity?
A. His popularity increased immediately
B. It had no effect on his popularity

C. It caused his popularity to decrease
as ever

D. His popularity remained as strong

8. According to the passage, *Moby Dick* is _____.

A. a romantic novel

B. a single-faceted work

C. a short story about a whale
the environment

D. a symbolic of humanity fighting

9. The word "**metamorphosis**" in the paragraph is closet in meaning to _____.

A. circle

B. change

C. mysticism

D. descent

10. The passage would most likely be assigned reading in a course on _____.

A. nineteenth-century novels

B. American history

C. oceanography

D. modern American literature

D. WRITING

I. Give the correct form of the following verbs:

a. When I (1) **looked** (look) at my suitcase, I could see that somebody (2) **had tried** (try) to open it.

b. The man at the corner table (3) **glanced** (glance) my way to see if I (4) **was listening** (listen).

c. It is recommended that he (5) **take** (take) a gallon of water with him if he hikes to the bottom of the Grand Canyon.

d. While he (6) **was learning** (learn) to drive he (7) **had** (have) twenty five accidents.

e. He wore the sunglasses (8) **to avoid** (avoid) (9) **being recognized** (recognize)

f. That proposal (10) **is being considered** (consider) by the members right now.

II. Fill in each blank with a suitable word.

In these days of high unemployment, it is often difficult (1) **for** young people to find a job. If they are lucky (2) **enough** to be asked to go for an interview, they may find (3) **that** there are at least twenty other applicants for the (4) **job**. If a company is thinking of offering (5) **you** a job, they will ask you for at least one reference from either your previous employer (6) **or** someone who know you well. (7) **Before** taking up your job, you may have to sign a contract. You will probably have to do some training, (8) **which** helps you to do the job more successfully. Once you have to decide that this is your chosen career, you will then have to work (9) **hard** to try and get promotion, which usually brings more responsibility and money! If you are unlucky, you may be

made redundant and not be able to find (10) **another** job. It is also a good idea to pay some money into a pension scheme, which will help you to look after yourself and your family when you are retired. Finally, good luck.

III. Give the correct form of the words.

1. I try not to remember this (1) **frightening** experience that only leaves me with unhappy thoughts. (fright)
2. Films festivals are (2) **typically** divided into categories like drama, documentary or animation. (typical)
3. A lot of toys encourage children's (3) **imagination**. (imagine)
4. She has one of the biggest art (4) **collection** in Britain. (collect)
5. According to some scientists the earth is losing its outer atmosphere because of (5) **pollution**. (pollute)
6. Don't worry. I'll be waiting for you at the (6) **entrance** to the pagoda. (enter)
7. The old theater of our city is being enlarged and (7) **modernized**. (modern)
8. (8) **Conservationists** are alarmed by the rate at which tropical rainforests are being destroyed. (conserve)
9. The athletes take part in the World Cup tournament in the true spirit of (9) **sportsmanship**. (sport)
10. He doesn't want to stay behind his father's (10) **fame**. (famous)

VI. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Use the word given and other words to complete each sentence.

1. He got down writing a letter as soon as he returned from his work.
→ No sooner **had he returned from his work than he got down writing a letter**
2. What a pity they closed the shop at lunch time.
→ I wish **they hadn't closed the shop at lunch time**
3. Please don't ask me that question.
→ I'd rather **you didn't ask me that question**
4. We didn't find out about the meeting until he phoned us.
→ It was not **until he phoned us that we found out about the meeting**
5. David went home before I arrived.
→ When I arrived, **David had gone home**

6. Alice and Charles did not decide to move to a bigger house until after the birth of their second child.
→ Only when **their second child was born did Alice and Charles decided to move to a bigger house.**
7. We didn't have managed without my father's money.
→ If it _____ **hadn't been or my father's money, we wouldn't have managed** _____
8. No one has tidied this room for 3 months.
→ This _____ **room hasn't tidied for 3 months** _____
9. Although Judy was severely disabled, she participated in many sports.
→ Despite _____ **being severely disabled/ her severe disability, Judy participated in many sports** _____
10. This will be the orchestra's first performance outside London.
→ This will be the first time _____ **the orchestra played/ performed outside London** _____

V. Using the prompts provided to write full sentences to make a complete letter:

Dear Sir/Madam,

1. I/ like/ express/ concern/ increasing/ number/ Karaoke bars/ city.

I would like to express my concern about the increasing number of Karaoke bars in the city.

2. There/ be/ lot/ reasons/ I/ object/ places.

There are a lot of reasons that (why) I object to these/ those places.

3. Firstly/ owners/ take/ much money/ those/ come/ sing.

Firstly, the owners take too much money from those who come to sing.

4. Secondly, they/ cause/ much noise/ neighborhood.

Secondly, they cause/ are causing too much noise in the neighborhood.

5. Thirdly, there/ number/ pupils/ play truant/ just/ go/ those/ places/ sing.

Thirdly, there are a number of pupils who play truant just to go to those places to sing.

6. Last/ least/ these bars/ do harm/ appearance/ city/ because/ their/ ugly flashing lights.

Last but not least, these bars do harm to the appearance of the city because of their ugly flashing lights.

7. I/ want/ say/ I/ not/ old fashioned/ person.

I want to say I am not an old fashioned person.

8. I/ hope/ authority/ take/ matter/ careful consideration.

I hope the authority will take this matter into careful consideration.

9. I/ not mean/ ban/ them/ but/ there/ should/ effective way control/ this kind/ entertainment places.

I do not mean to ban them but there should be an effective way to control this kind of entertainment places.

10. I/ look/ see/ city council/ do/ this matter.

I am looking forward to seeing the city council doing this matter.

Yours truly,
Thomas Cruise.

UNIT 4. FOR A BETTER COMMUNITY - KEY

PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

annoying	(adj.)	gây khó chịu, phiền phức
annoyed	(adj.)	khó chịu
boring	(adj.)	chán ngắt, tẻ nhạt
bored	(adj.)	cảm thấy nhàm chán
dedicated	(adj.)	tận tụy
hopeless	(adj.)	vô vọng
hopeful	(adj.)	lạc quan, tràn đầy hi vọng
helpless	(adj.)	bất lực
helpful	(adj.)	hữu ích, nhiệt tình
meaningless	(adj.)	vô nghĩa
meaningful	(adj.)	có ý nghĩa
charity organization	(n. phr.)	tổ chức từ thiện
charity work	(n. phr.)	công việc từ thiện
community	(n.)	cộng đồng
develop	(n.)	phát triển
development	(n.)	sự phát triển
disadvantaged	(adj.)	thiệt thòi, có hoàn cảnh khó khăn
donate	(v.)	quyên góp ủng hộ

donation	(n.)	sự quyên góp, khoản tiền quyên góp
donor	(n.)	nhà tài trợ, người ủng hộ
handicapped	(adj)	khuyết tật
low-income	(adj.)	thu nhập thấp
needy	(adj.)	túng thiếu, nghèo
priority	(n.)	ưu tiên
volunteer	(n.)	tình nguyện viên
volunteer	(v.)	tình nguyện
volunteer work	(n. phr)	công việc tình nguyện
advertisement	(n.)	quảng cáo
application	(n.)	sự xin việc, ứng tuyển
benefit	(n.)	lợi ích
childless people	(n. phr)	những người không có con
concerned	(adj.)	quan tâm, lo lắng
direct the traffic	(v.)	hướng dẫn giao thông
experience	(n.)	kinh nghiệm
facility	(n.)	cơ sở vật chất, trang thiết bị
interact	(v.)	tương tác, tiếp xúc
job market	(n. phr)	thị trường lao động việc làm
martyr	(n.)	liệt sĩ
narrow-minded	(adj.)	hẹp hòi, nhỏ nhen
non-profit	(adj.)	phi lợi nhuận
passionate	(adj)	đam mê, nồng nhiệt
position	(n.)	vị trí
reference	(n.)	thư giới thiệu
remote area	(n. phr)	vùng sâu vùng xa
running water	(n. phr)	nước máy
rural area	(n. phr)	vùng nông thôn
urgent	(adj.)	cấp bách, khẩn cấp
widen roads	(v)	mở rộng đường xá

B. GRAMMAR

I. PAST SIMPLE & PAST CONTINUOUS

Thì Quá khứ đơn và thì Quá khứ tiếp diễn

1. Dạng thức của động từ

a. Thì Quá khứ đơn

Động từ to be

S + was / were + ...

Trong đó:

- **was** đi với các chủ ngữ số ít: *I, He, She, It, ...*
- **were** đi với: *You, We, They*, và các chủ ngữ số nhiều khác.

Động từ thường

S + V (past simple) + ...

Trong đó:

- Thêm "**ed**" nếu đó là động từ có quy tắc.
- Không thêm "**ed**" mà biến đổi khác nếu là động từ bất quy tắc.

MỘT SỐ ĐỘNG TỪ BẤT QUY TẮC THƯỜNG GẶP

become → became	go → went	ring → rang
bring → brought	have → had	see → saw
buy → bought	make → made	teach → taught
do → did	meet → met	wear → wore
read → read	write → wrote	get → got

Ex: He visited some palaces. *Cậu ấy đã đi thăm một số lâu đài.*

Động từ visit được thêm đuôi ed thành visited - dạng quá khứ đơn của động từ visit.

It began to rain. *Trời đã bắt đầu mưa.*

Trong ví dụ này, động từ begin biến đổi thành began vì đây là động từ bất quy tắc.

2. Thì Quá khứ tiếp diễn

S + was / were + V-ing + ...

Trong đó: + **was** đi với các chủ ngữ số ít: *I, He, She, It, ...*
+ **were** đi với: *You, We, They*, và các chủ ngữ số nhiều khác.

Ex: Andy was staying in Paris. *Andy đang ở Paris.*

Động từ stay chia thành was staying tương ứng với chủ ngữ số ít là Andy.

We were walking in the park. *Chúng tôi đang đi bộ trong công viên.*

Động từ walk chia thành were walking tương ứng với chủ ngữ số nhiều là We.

II. KHÁC BIỆT TRONG CÁC CÁCH SỬ DỤNG

1. Khác biệt 1

- Thì quá khứ đơn dùng để diễn tả một hành động đã hoàn thành tại một thời điểm trong quá khứ.
- Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn nhấn mạnh sự việc đang xảy ra tại một thời điểm trong quá khứ.

Ex: I did my homework at 4 p.m. yesterday.

Tớ đã làm xong bài tập lúc 4h chiều hôm qua. - sự việc đã hoàn thành vào 4h chiều qua.

I was doing my homework at 4 p.m. yesterday.

Tớ đang làm bài tập vào lúc 4h chiều qua. - vẫn đang diễn ra, chưa hoàn thành vào 4h chiều qua.

My parents got up at 5.30 a.m. yesterday.

Sáng hôm qua bố mẹ tớ dậy lúc 5h30.

My sister and I were sleeping at 5.30 yesterday.

Chị tớ và tớ vẫn đang ngủ lúc 5.30 sáng qua.

2. Khác biệt 2

- Thì quá khứ đơn: diễn tả một chuỗi các hành động trong quá khứ, hành động này xảy ra sau hành động khác. Thường dùng kết hợp với các từ nối như *and* hay *then*.
- Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn: diễn tả các hành động xảy ra song song đồng thời. Thường sử dụng liên từ *while*, có nghĩa là trong khi.

Ex: She came home, opened the window **and** turned on the TV.

Cô ấy về nhà, mở cửa sổ và bật tivi. - một chuỗi các hành động diễn ra lần lượt.

She was watching TV **while** her husband was cooking.

Cô ấy đang xem tivi trong khi chồng cô ấy đang nấu cơm. - 2 hành động xảy ra cùng lúc

She came in the room and **then** looked around for a seat.

Cô ấy vào phòng và sau đó tìm một ghế để ngồi.

He was playing a mobile game **while** the teacher was speaking.

Cậu ấy đang chơi game trên điện thoại di động trong khi cô giáo đang giảng bài.

III. KẾT HỢP THÌ QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN VÀ QUÁ KHỨ TIẾP DIỄN

Kết hợp thì quá khứ đơn và quá khứ tiếp diễn, sử dụng *when* hoặc *while* để diễn tả một hành động đang xảy ra thì hành động khác xen vào.

- Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn được dùng để diễn tả hành động đang xảy ra, thường là dài hơn, lâu hơn và được đi với while hoặc when.
- Thì quá khứ đơn diễn tả hành động xen vào và chỉ đi với when.

LƯU Ý:

- Khi *When* hoặc *While* đứng đầu câu thì cần có dấu phẩy ngăn cách 2 mệnh đề.
- Khi *when* hoặc *while* đứng giữa 2 mệnh đề thì không cần dấu phẩy.
- Không dùng when và while trong cùng một câu.

Ex: **When** the phone rang, we were having dinner.

Khi điện thoại kêu, chúng tôi đang ăn tối.

Trong ví dụ trên, *the phone rang* là việc xen vào nên chia ở quá khứ đơn và đi với *When*, còn *we were having dinner* là việc đang xảy ra nên chia ở thì quá khứ tiếp diễn.

Câu trên cũng có thể viết thành:

The phone rang **while** we were having dinner.

Điện thoại kêu trong khi chúng tôi đang ăn tối.

Trong câu này, *we were having dinner* chia ở thì quá khứ tiếp diễn, đi với *while*. Liên từ *while* đứng ở giữa câu nên không cần dấu phẩy.

When the teacher asked me a question, I wasn't listening.

Khi cô giáo hỏi tôi, tôi đang không chú ý lắng nghe.

We arrived at school **while** it was raining. (We arrived at school when it was raining.)

Chúng tôi đến trường trong khi trời đang mưa.

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the others'.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. disadvantaged | B. handicapped | C. bored | D. annoyed |
| 2. A. donation | B. priority | C. hopeless | D. low-income |
| 3. A. development | B. dedicated | C. devoted | D. describe |
| 4. A. development | B. improvement | C. documentary | D. environment |
| 5. A. organisation | B. disadvantaged | C. meaningless | D. obvious |

II. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the others'.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. A. rural | B. surprise | C. successful | D. volunteer |
| 2. A. application | B. benefit | C. non-profit | D. narrow-minded |
| 3. A. reference | B. remote | C. reaction | D. creation |

4. A. area B. market C. martyr D. archaeology
 5. A. development B. demonstrate C. dedicated D. delicate

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose the options that best fit the blanks.

- Your music is very _____. Can't you just stop it?
 A. annoying B. interesting C. annoyed D. bored
- If you can do something to help others, you will find your life _____.
 A. meaningful B. meaningless C. helpless D. interested
- Some of the students were _____ at English, so volunteer teachers had to try very hard.
 A. hopeless B. hopeful C. endless D. excited
- She wishes she could do some _____ work this summer.
 A. voluntarily B. volunteerism C. volunteer D. volunteering
- Life is sometimes very harsh for _____ families in big cities.
 A. lowly-income B. low-income C. highly-income D. high-income
- The local government provides financial support to the children of _____ parents.
 A. needful B. needed C. need-blind D. needy
- This charity provides financial support and mental comfort to _____ children.
 A. advantaged B. disadvantaged C. advantageous D. disadvantageous
- You can _____ books, clothes, medicine and money to this charity.
 A. donor B. donate C. devote D. dedicate

II. Fill the blanks with the correct forms of the words given: *prioritize, meaning, hope, dedication, boredom, donate*

- He is a _____ **boring** _____ person. I don't want to talk to him.
- Her story is nonsense. It seems _____ **meaningless** _____ to me.
- Quality education should be a top _____ **priority** _____ in developing countries.
- We received a _____ **donation** _____ of 50 million VND from an anonymous donor yesterday.
- She is _____ **dedicated** _____ to her job at the charity centre. She spends most of her free time there.
- Do you feel _____ **hopeful** _____ about the result? - Yes, I think I performed well at the interview.

III. Choose the underlined part that needs correcting.

- It was raining so heavily while we arrived at the beach.

A B **C** D

2. I was coming home this morning when I was seeing Kate waiting at the bus stop.

A

B

C D

3. When he was calling me, I was doing the cooking for dinner.

A

B

C D

4. He putted the letter on the table and then he got out to take a taxi.

A

B

C

D

5. While we talked, someone in the same room was recording our conversation.

A

B

C

D

6. While Hung arrived at the airport, his family and close friends were waiting for him.

A

B

C

D

7. Actually, during I came to see you this morning, I just wanted you to help me.

A

B

C

D

8. We played some games, teaching the disadvantaged children and gave clothes to them.

A

B

C

D

IV. Match each word with its correct meaning.

1. advertisement

A. communicate with people when you spend time with them

E

2. benefit

B. knowledge and skills gained through doing something

C

3. passionate

C. a helpful and useful effect

D

4. experience

D. having strong enthusiasm for something

B

5. interact

E. something that tells people about a film, a job or a service.

A

V. Choose the options that best fit the blanks.

1. Volunteer work helps young people know their strong and weak points before they enter the ____.

A. job world
market

B. professional market

C. job market

D. position

2. If we ____ the roads in this area, the economy can develop.

A. stretch

B. increase

C. widen

D. restrict

3. She has a lot of ____ in this field, so she was offered the job.

- A. contact B. involvement C. maturity **D. experience**
4. Taking care of the needs of the old, the sick and the homeless is our ____.
- A. top priority** B. top preference C. utmost importance D. chief priority
5. Local people in this neighborhood have been supplied with ____ for five years now.
- A. pipes B. river water **C. running water** D. rainwater
6. Mary wrote a letter of ____ to Microsoft yesterday after seeing their advertisement in the morning.
- A. position B. appliance C. employment **D. application**
7. Building necessary ____ such as hospitals, schools and parks is important.
- A. facilities** B. services C. equipment D. utensils
8. My sister is writing a letter to apply for the ____ of an English teacher at the center.
- A. vacancy B. position C. place **D. Both A & B are correct.**

VI. Choose the options that best fit the blanks.

1. What ____ in Paris in 2004?
- A. did you do** B. were you doing C. you did D. were you
2. I ____ in the queue when I ____ that I had lost my wallet.
- A. was standing - was realizing B. stood - was realizing
- C. was standing - realized** D. stood - realized
3. What ____ when you injured your finger? - I was playing volleyball.
- A. did you do B. were you C. you did **D. were you doing**
4. This time last week, we ____ for the exam. It was so hot in the examination room.
- A. would have been sitting B. had been sitting C. sat **D. were sitting**
5. When I first saw Miriam, I ____ her to come in for tea and we talked for nearly two hours.
- A. invited** B. invite C. have invited D. was inviting
6. The girls were chatting ____ the boys were playing games.
- A. when **B. while** C. during D. at the same time
7. While the teacher was explaining to the whole class, she ____ carefully.
- A. didn't listen **B. wasn't listening** C. had listened D. wasn't listened
8. We arrived at the hotel quite early, ____ in and had lunch.
- A. checking **B. checked** C. was checking D. to check
9. She ____ in Provence, France for two years when she was a student.

A. was living B. lived C. had lived D. has lived

10. ____ my mother and I were cooking in the kitchen, John came in and broke the dish.

A. When B. While C. During D. Both A & B are correct.

VII. Choose the correct forms of the verbs.

Nelson Mandela (1918 – 2013) was born to a poor family in a small village in South Africa. As the first child in the family to go to school, he ____ **showed** ____ (1. show) an interest in political issues and was forced to leave his first university for protesting.

At that time, as a result of apartheid, black and white people were separated from each other. Black people had to live in rural areas and farm on infertile lands. Witnessing all those injustices, Mandela ____ **joined** ____ (2. join) a group and ____ **fought** ____ (3. fight) against the government. However, the ruling government ____ **arrested** ____ (4. arrest) him in 1962 and ____ **put** ____ (5. put) him into prison for the next 27 years. When he was in prison, he ____ **began** ____ (6. begin) to find out more about his struggles for democracy and justice.

Released in 1990, Mandela ____ **kept** ____ (7. keep) fighting against the ruling government and black people in the world already ____ **considered** ____ (8. consider) him their hero. Eventually, his struggles ____ **got** ____ (9. got) successful results as they put an end to apartheid. Nelson Mandela ____ **became** ____ (10. become) the first democratically elected president of South Africa.

VIII. Determine whether the following sentences are Correct or Incorrect.

1. I was going out for a walk when I came across an old friend.

Correct

2. My brother was playing video games, when my father suddenly came in.

Incorrect

3. I finished my homework and then I went to my friend's house.

Correct

4. While my mother was watching her favourite Indian film, my father was reading a newspaper.

Correct

5. John was hurting his ankle while we were playing tennis.

Incorrect

6. They were active in community service when they were young.

Correct

IX. Fill the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs given: *buy, walk, meet, teach, promise, sleep*

1. My father bought me this T-shirt on his trip to Nha Trang last summer.
2. He promised me to come back early and then he wore his boots and went in the rain.
3. We were walking on the beach when it started to rain.
4. The twins were whispering about their toys while their parents were sleeping .
5. My sister was teaching me English when we noticed someone enter our house.
6. We met Jack and Rosy on our way home from school yesterday.

X. Give the correct forms (Past Simple or Past Continuous) of the verbs given in the brackets.

1. Susan was studying (study) in her room when she heard the noise.
2. What were they doing (they, do) at eleven p.m. last night - it was so noisy?
3. After going to the library, I met (meet) Jane and we went out for some coffee.
4. I was eight years old when my elder sister taught (teach) me how to ride a bike.
5. John did not go (not go) to school last week because he was ill.
6. I didn't know anything about the plane crash in my neighborhood because I was working (work) inside at that time.
7. My mother gave (give) me ten dollars and asked me to go to the supermarket.
8. The children were playing (play) in the living room when they broke the vase.
9. I bought (buy) this coat in 2009, but it is still fashionable.
10. My grandmother was making breakfast while my grandfather was doing (do) the gardening.

C. READING

I. Read the passage and write A, B, or C.

A: I spent the month of November 2015 volunteering in South Africa. For the first two weeks, I worked with 2 to 4 kids in grades 1 and 2 on Maths and literacy skills. I guided them and measured their progress so that other volunteers could take on my work after I left. For the last two weeks, I instructed the small kids to do personal hygiene and make toys. I had a lot of fun working with them.

B: Working with people living with HIV/AIDS is always emotionally and technically demanding. Before my volunteer trip to Ghana, I got training about HIV/AIDS. I worked with different groups of people. It was very emotional when I visited and played with children with HIV/AIDS in orphanages. I also visited schools, universities and households to give presentations and leaflets about HIV/AIDS. I had never felt so helpful before. I can't wait for my next trips to other African countries.

C: My main duty was to provide financial advice for poor households in Kenya. I had to adapt myself immediately to the new weather, new people and new food there. Fortunately, my host family was the most selfless and encouraging people I'd ever known. I lived with three other volunteers, and the host family considered us as their daughters. I loved dinner time when all the family members gathered together and told jokes. Sometimes, I helped the children in the family with their homework. I feel so blessed I've known them in my life.

1. ____C____ mentioned a specific time of the day he/she enjoyed the most
2. ____A____ only worked with children
3. ____A____ told the specific time he/she did volunteer work
4. ____C____ helped people with problems related to money
5. ____B____ wished to go to other African countries
6. ____A____ his/her work was closely related to other volunteers'
7. ____B____ work worked with different groups of people
8. ____B____ felt that he/she was very helpful
9. ____C____ adapted himself/ herself quickly to a new environment
10. ____A____ taught children how to keep their bodies clean
11. ____C____ feel very lucky because of knowing some people
12. ____C____ helped someone with their homework
13. ____B____ mentioned training before his/her trip
14. ____B____ accepted that his/her volunteer work is demanding
15. ____C____ stayed with other volunteers in a same family

II. Choose the best answer to fill in the blank.

THE LOST PROPERTY OFFICE

Recently I read a magazine article about the things that people lose ____ (1) they travel on the London Underground. I couldn't believe it at first. ____ (2) you are a violinist, and when you ____ (3) off at your station, you leave your violin on the train. It seems strange that nobody says, "____ (4) me, but I think you've forgotten something". I suppose the violinist ____ (5) have been thinking of someone else, and there might ____ (6) have been any other passengers on the train. Still, why didn't the violinist ____ (7) to the lost property office? All the lost property on the underground system ____ (8) to be sent to this office, so if you lose anything you can easily get it ____ (9). In this case, the violinist must have ____ (10) very absent-minded. Perhaps he or she didn't have to play the violin ever again after this journey.

- | | | | |
|---------------|---------|----------|--------------|
| 1. A. during | B. when | C. since | D. after |
| 2. A. Suppose | B. If | C. While | D. Sometimes |

- | | | | |
|--------------|----------|-----------|------------|
| 3. A. go | B. step | C. get | D. walk |
| 4. A. Help | B. It's | C. Excuse | D. Sorry |
| 5. A. should | B. might | C. who | D. to |
| 6. A. not | B. often | C. then | D. so |
| 7. A. tell | B. find | C. visit | D. go |
| 8. A. has | B. must | C. needs | D. should |
| 9. A. again | B. back | C. return | D. too |
| 10. A. felt | B. had | C. been | D. because |

III. Choose the sentence which is closest in meaning with the given one.

- It took her two hours to do housework yesterday.
 - She spent two hours to doing housework yesterday.
 - It took her two hours doing housework yesterday.
 - She spent two hours doing housework yesterday.
 - Do housework yesterday took him two hours.
- The weather is very cold, so they can't go swimming.
 - The weather is so cold that they can't go swimming.
 - The weather isn't cold enough for them to go swimming.
 - The weather is too cold for them going swimming.
 - It is so a cold weather that they can't go swimming.
- My friend is living in Moscow. I received this letter from him.
 - My friend, whom I received this letter, is living in Moscow.
 - My friend, from whom I received this letter, is living in Moscow.
 - My friend whom I received this letter from is living in Moscow.
 - My friend, that I received this letter, is living in Moscow.
- They saw the children play football in the street.
 - The children were being seen to play football in the street.
 - The children were seen to playing football in the street.
 - The children were seen play football in the street.
 - The children were seen to play football in the street.
- I have never been to France before.

A. It's the first time that I've gone to France.	B. It's the first time that I went to France.
--	---

- C. It's the first time that I've been to France.
France.
6. It's a pity that you didn't tell us about this.
A. I wish you told us about this.
C. I wish you would tell us about this.
7. He's getting them to mend the windows.
A. He's having the windows to mend.
C. He's having to be mended the windows.
8. It started to rain at 2 o'clock and it is still raining.
A. It has been raining at 2 o'clock.
C. It has been raining for 2 o'clock.
9. They made her hand over her passport.
A. She was made to hand over her passport.
B. She was made hand over her passport.
C. She was handed over to make her passport.
D. She was handed over for her passport to make.
10. I tried to eat the cake, but it was too sweet.
A. It was such a sweet cake that I couldn't eat it.
C. The cake was too sweet that I couldn't eat it.
D. The cake was very sweet that I couldn't eat it.
11. My brother and I went to that school.
A. I went to that school and my brother, too. B. I went to that school and so my brother did.
C. I went to that school and so did my brother.
D. I went to that school and so my brother did, too.
12. She said to us: "Don't be late again."
A. She said to us not to be late again.
C. She told to us not to be late again.
B. She told us to be not late again.
D. She told us not to be late again.
13. I often get up early in the morning.
A. I am used to getting up early in the morning.
B. I am used to get up early in the morning.
- D. It's the first time that I was to
- B. I wish you had told us about this.
D. I wish you have told us about this.
- B. He's having to mend the windows.
D. He's having the windows mended.
- B. It has been raining since 2 o'clock.
D. It has been raining in 2 o'clock.

- C. I used to get up early in the morning. D. I used to getting up early in the morning.
14. Getting a good job doesn't interest him.
- A. He isn't good at getting an interesting job. B. He isn't interested in getting a good job.
- C. He is only interested in getting a good job. D. Even a good job isn't suitable to him.
15. The garden is too small to play football in.
- A. The garden is so small not to play football in.
- B. The garden is small enough to play football in.
- C. The garden isn't big enough to play football in.
- D. The garden is such small that they can't play football in.

D. WRITING

I. Writing an application letter for volunteer work

1000 Lang Street

Dong Da, Hanoi

20 July, 2017

Director

Heart to Heart Charity Office

18 Bao Loc Street, Hanoi

Dear Sir or Madam,

I saw your advertisement on Facebook on July 19th, I am writing to apply for the job of a volunteer at your Heart to Heart Charity Office.

I have experience in doing office work. Last semester, I had a chance to volunteer at Kim Lien School as a front office staff. My main duties were to welcome guests and donors.

I am reliable, active, hard-working and good at communication. If necessary, I can send you a reference from my teacher and a copy of my volunteer certificate.

I am available for an interview any day from eight a.m. to four p.m., except Sunday. If I am selected as a volunteer at your Office, I can start working from June 24 or earlier if required.

I am looking forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Nguyen Minh Tien

II. Rewrite the following sentences without changing their meaning, using the given words.

1. If they had left earlier, they wouldn't have missed the train.
Had _____ **they left earlier, they wouldn't have missed the train** _____
2. My mother is making a cake for my birthday.
A cake _____ **is being made for my birthday by my mother** _____
3. "Don't be afraid," he said to his daughter.
He told _____ **his daughter not to be afraid** _____
4. I have never been late for work before.
Never before _____ **have I been late for work** _____
5. It's so cold. I don't like it at all.
I wish _____ **it wasn't so cold** _____
6. Our company spent thousands of dollars upgrading our computer systems.
It took _____ **our company thousands of dollars to upgrade our computer systems** _____
7. Do you understand what he means?
Are you _____ **aware of what he means** _____
8. She can't sleep at night because she has a backache.
Because of _____ **her backache, she can't sleep at night** _____
9. I prefer you not to tell anyone about this.
I'd rather you _____ **didn't tell anyone about this** _____
10. No sooner had I entered the room than the light went out.
Hardly _____ **had I entered the room when the light went out** _____

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others in each group.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>retu</u> rn <u>ed</u> | B. curs <u>e</u> d | C. start <u>e</u> d | D. learn <u>e</u> d |
| 2. A. constru <u>ct</u> ion | B. phys <u>i</u> cal | C. industr <u>y</u> | D. satisf <u>y</u> |
| 3. A. rec <u>e</u> nt | B. rece <u>i</u> ve | C. fauc <u>e</u> t | D. effici <u>e</u> nt |
| 4. A. erupt <u>i</u> on | B. tradit <u>i</u> on | C. suggest <u>i</u> on | D. addit <u>i</u> on |
| 5. A. <u>b</u> ear <u>d</u> | B. <u>s</u> earch | C. <u>p</u> ear <u>l</u> | D. <u>h</u> ear <u>d</u> |

II. Choose the word whose main stress is placed differently from the others in each group.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. communicate | B. effectively | C. efficiency | D. innovat <u>ion</u> |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------------|

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
| 2. A. occasional | B. industrial | C. information | D. variety |
| 3. A. plentiful | B. adequate | C. relative | D. excellent |
| 4. A. distinguish | B. compliment | C. slavery | D. natural |
| 5. A. compost | B. migrant | C. typhoon | D. electric |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose the best answer from the four options marked A, B, C or D to complete each sentence below.

- You have never been to England, ____ you?
A. haven't B. have C. never D. ever
- Many students go there on weekends to have a rest after a week.
A. working hard B. hardly C. hard working D. worked
- Ba dropped his watch when he was ____ the bus.
A. turning off B. getting off C. taking off D. going off
- Mary's eyes are weak. ____, she has to wear glasses.
A. But B. However C. And D. Therefore
- Scientists are looking for an ____ way to reduce energy consumption.
A. effective B. affection C. effect D. effectively
- ____ to have a lunch at 12 o'clock every day?
A. Did she used B. Was she used C. Is she used D. Did she use
- The lion - tamer and his lion ____ we saw on the stage came from Moscow.
A. who B. which C. that D. whom
- Energy-saving bulbs should be used ____ electricity.
A. to save B. saving C. save D. to saving
- Analysts suggested the country ____ its infrastructure to get foreign investment.
A. improve B. to improve C. improves D. improving
- The report showed the U.S. trade deficit ____ in February
A. shrink B. shrunk C. shrunken D. shrinking
- The controversial film was nominated ____ eight Academy Awards.
A. of B. about C. with D. for
- Union members ____ the privatization of the country's airports.
A. replied B. annoyed C. protested D. identified
- The advertising executive resigned over his inappropriate ____ made at a conference.

- A. dress B. acting C. welcome **D. remarks**
14. Thieves made _____ over twenty thousand pounds.
A. off with B. off C. up D. up with
15. The children _____ to the zoo.
 A. were enjoyed taken B. were enjoyed taking **C. enjoyed being taken** D. enjoyed taking

II. Choose the underlined words or phrases (A, B, C or D) that are incorrect in standard English.

1. It took me so many time to learn that lesson three months ago.
 A **B** C D
2. My father has retired since three years and he is now living on his pension.
 A **B** C D
3. Mrs. Brown's children are used to be picked up after school everyday.
 A B **C** D
4. My father asked us not to spend too much time play computer games.
 A B C **D**
5. They played so good game of tennis last night that they surprised their audience.
 A B C D

III. Give the correct form of the words in CAPITAL to complete the sentences.

1. These _____ **innovations** _____ will conserve the earth.
 INNOVATE
2. We should be more _____ **economical** _____ with our electricity.
 ECONOMIC
3. A list of _____ **forthcoming** _____ events for the autumn is being prepared. COME
4. The _____ **destruction** _____ of forests has brought about serious floods recently.
 DESTROY
5. My neighbors are very kind. They are _____ **supportive** _____ to me during my parents' absence.
 SUPPORT

IV. Give the correct form of the verbs to complete the passage.

Last week I was walking home after playing tennis when it started raining very heavily. "Oh no, I will get soaked before I reach home", I thought. I wish I (1) _____ **had remembered** _____ (remember) to bring my raincoat. But unfortunately I had left it at home. How

stupid of me! I always forget to bring it with me. Luckily just then a friend of mine passed in her car and offered me a lift.

"Are you going home? Or do you want to go for a drink?" she asked. "I think I'd rather you (2) **took** (take) me home," I said. "If I don't change my clothes, I know I (3) **will fall** (fall) ill, and then I won't be able to play in the tennis tournament next week. And I (4) **have been practicing** (practice) hard for the last month" "I will wait for you to change if you like" she told me. "I think it's time you (5) **relaxed** (relax) for a change. You have been worrying too much, which makes you fall ill more easily. It's got nothing to do with the rain!"

C. READING

I. Choose the best options A, B, C or D to answer the following questions.

The growth of cities, the construction of hundreds of new factories, and the spread of railroads in the United States before 1850 had increased the need for better illumination. But the lighting in American homes had improved very little over that of ancient times. Through the colonial period, homes were lit with tallow candles or with a lamp of the kind used in ancient Rome- a dish of fish oil or other animal or vegetable oil in which a twisted rag **served as** a wick. Some people used lard, but they had to heat charcoal underneath to keep it soft and burnable. The sperm whale provided superior burning oil, but **this** was expensive. In 1830 a new substance called "camphene" was patented, and it proved to be an remained expensive, had an unpleasant odor, and also was dangerously explosive.

Between 1830 and 1850 it seemed that the only hope for cheaper illumination in the United States was the wider use of gas. In the 1840s American gas manufacturers adopted improved British techniques for producing illuminating gas from coal. But the expense of piping gas to the consumer remained so high that until mid-century gas lighting was feasible only in urban areas, and only for public buildings for the wealthy. In 1854 a Canadian doctor, Abraham Gesner, patented a process for distilling a pitch like mineral found in New Brunswick and Nova Scotia that produced illuminating gas and an oil that he called "kerosene" (from "keros", the Greek word for wax, and "ene" because it **resembled** camphene). Kerosene, though cheaper than camphene, had an unpleasant odor, and Gesner never made his fortune from **it**. But Gesner had aroused a new hope for making illuminating oil from a product coming out of North American mines.

1. Which of the following is NOT mentioned as a reason why better lighting had become necessary by the mid-nineteenth century?

A. development of railroads
facilities

B. demand for better medical

- C. increases in the number of new factories D. growth of cities
2. The phrase "**served as**" is closest meaning to ____.
- A. differed from **B. functioned as** C. rested upon D. reacted to
3. The word "**this**" refers to ____.
- A. lard B. charcoal C. wick **D. oil**
4. Which of the following is NOT mentioned as a disadvantage of camphene?
- A. high cost B. bad smell C. potential to explode **D. greasy texture**
5. What can be inferred about the illuminating gas described in the paragraph?
- A. It was first developed in the United States.
- B. It was not allowed to be used in public buildings.
- C. It was not widely available until mid-century.**
- D. It had an unpleasant smell.
6. The word "**resembled**" is closest in meaning to ____.
- A. was similar to** B. cost the same as C. was made from D. sounded like
7. According to the passage, what advantage did the kerosene patented by Gesner have over camphene?
- A. Kerosene had a more pleasant smell.
- B. Kerosene was less expensive.**
- C. Kerosene burned more brightly.
- D. Kerosene was safer to use.
8. The word "**it**" refers to ____.
- A. fortune B. odor C. camphene **D. kerosene**
9. Which of the following best describes the organization of the passage?
- A. a description of events in chronological order**
- B. a comparison of two events
- C. an analysis of scientific findings
- D. the statement of a theory and possible explanations

II. Arrange these sentences of a review in the correct order.

- A. He writes a letter to the company accepting the job and gives it to his son, Bobby, to post.
- B. My award goes to young Justin Time, who plays Bobby.
- C. Bob isn't too pleased, because he'd rather play football with his friends, but he sets off on the long walk to the post office.

D. *Local playwright Hanna has given her hometown a chance to see her most successful play,*

The Letter,

at the Lexford Playhouse.

E. The Letter is on for just one more week, so don't miss it.

F. The story is set in the 1930

G. Unaware of its importance, Bobby gives them the letter and runs off happily to play football.

H. The play is excellent, and the lighting, scenery, and sound effects are all very good. The cast perform it brilliantly.

I. If you want to know what happens next, you'll have to go and see the play for yourself, but believe me, you won't regret it.

J. John Barlow, who has been out of work for several months, is offered a job by a large engineering firm.

K. On the way he meets two older boys who offer to post the letter for him.

1. F 2. J 3. A 4. C 5. K

6. G 7. I 8. H 9. B 10. E

III. Read the following passage and decide which option A, B, C, D best fits each space.

SAVE MONEY ON THE BOOK THAT AIMS TO SAVE ANIMALS

Do you want to take part in the battle to save the world's wildlife? Animal Watch is the book which will (1) _____ you in the fight for survival that (2) _____ many of our endangered animals and show how they struggle on the (3) _____ of extinction.

As you enjoy the book's 250 pages and over 150 color photographs, you will have the (4) _____ of knowing that part of your purchase money is being used to (5) _____ animals (6) _____ from the comfort of your armchair, you will be able to observe the world's animals close-up and explore their habitats. You will also discover the terrible results of human (7) _____ for land, flesh and skins.

Animal Watch is packed with fascinating facts. Did you know that polar bears cover their black noses (8) _____ their (9) _____ so they can hunt their prey in the snow without being seen, for example? Or that (10) _____ each orangutan which is captured, one has to die?

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. combine | B. involve | C. bring | D. lead |
| 2. A. meets | B. opposes | C. forces | D. faces |
| 3. A. edge | B. start | C. limit | D. end |
| 4. A. virtue | B. enjoyment | C. satisfaction | D. value |
| 5. A. enable | B. help | C. allow | D. assist |

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|-----------|------------|
| 6. A. preserve | B. conserve | C. revive | D. survive |
| 7. A. greed | B. interest | C. care | D. concern |
| 8. A. from | B. by | C. for | D. with |
| 9. A. feet | B. paws | C. claws | D. toes |
| 10. A. for | B. at | C. from | D. to |

D. WRITING

Rewrite the following sentences using the words in bold, in such a way that it means the same as the one given. Do not alter these words in any way.

- "Please don't smoke in the house." she said to us. (to)
→ She told **us not to smoke in the house**
- They're telling me that I must make a decision soon. (pressure)
→ They are **putting pressure on me to make a decision soon**
- I only found out the truth because I heard the two of them talking. (found)
→ If I **hadn't heard the two of them talking, I wouldn't have found out the truth**
- I bought myself some good new clothes. I need them for my new job. (which)
→ I bought myself **some good new clothes which I need for my new job**
- I'm trying to concentrate, but all that noise you're making is distracting me. (putting)
→ I'm trying to concentrate, but all that noise **you're making is putting me off**

Unit 5. INVENTIONS - KEY

PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. VOCABULARY

3-D printer	(n. phr.):	máy in 3D
bulky	(adj.):	cồng kềnh
collapse	(v.):	sụp đổ, hỏng
correction pen	(n.):	bút xóa
device	(n.):	thiết bị
digital camera	(n. phr.):	máy ảnh kỹ thuật số
drawback	(n.):	khuyết điểm
earbuds	(n.):	tai nghe nhỏ có thể nhét vào tai

e-book reader	(n. phr):	thiết bị đọc sách điện tử
economical	(adj.):	tiết kiệm, đáng giá đồng tiền
fabric	(n.):	vải
food processor	(n.):	máy xay đa năng
good-for-nothing	(adj.):	vô dụng
handheld	(n.):	thiết bị cầm tay
headphones	(n.):	tai nghe (úp vào tai)
imitate	(v.):	bắt chước, sao chép
inspiration	(n.):	cảm hứng
inspire	(v.):	truyền cảm hứng
invention	(n.):	phát minh
laptop	(n.):	máy tính xách tay
patent	(n.):	bằng sáng chế
portable	(adj.):	cầm tay, dễ mang theo
runaway	(adj.):	tự đi chuyển, không kiểm soát được
self-cleaning	(adj.):	tự làm sạch
smartphone	(n.):	điện thoại thông minh
social networking site	(n. phr.):	mạng xã hội
solar charger	(n. phr):	sạc năng lượng mặt trời
speakers	(n.):	loa
submarine	(n.):	tàu ngầm
vaccination	(n.):	tiêm phòng vắc-xin
vacuum cleaner	(n.):	máy hút bụi
versatile	(adj.):	đa năng, nhiều công dụng

B. GRAMMAR

I. THÌ HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH (PRESENT PERFECT)

1. Dạng thức của động từ

Lưu ý

- * I/ You/ We/ They/ Danh từ số nhiều: have (có thể viết rút gọn thành 've)
 - * He/She/ I/ Danh từ số ít/ Danh từ không đếm được: has (có thể viết rút gọn thành 's)
- Vp.p. trong bài này là quá khứ phân từ của động từ.

a. Dạng khẳng định

Động từ “be”

S + have / has + been + ...

- Ex: She has been sick since Sunday,
Cô ấy bị ốm từ hôm Chủ nhật.
We've been friends for ten years.
Chúng tôi làm bạn được 10 năm rồi.

Động từ thường

S + have / has + Vp.p. + ...

- Ex: My money has been stolen. (*Câu bị động*)
Tiền của tôi bị mất rồi.
I have read this book three times.
Tớ đã đọc sách này 3 lần rồi.

b. Dạng phủ định

Động từ "be"

S + have not (haven't) / has not (hasn't) + been + ...

- Ex: My mother hasn't been back yet.
Mẹ tớ vẫn chưa về.
Laura and Peter haven't been in touch for years.
Lâu rồi Laura và Peter không liên lạc.

Động từ thường

S + have not (haven't) / has not (hasn't) + Vp.p. + ...

- Ex: She hasn't called me yet.
Cô ấy vẫn chưa gọi cho tớ.
We haven't seen Jack since 2015.
Chúng tôi chưa gặp Jack kể từ năm 2015.

c. Dạng nghi vấn

Động từ "be"

Hỏi: Have / Has + S + been + ...?

Trả lời: Yes, S have/ has.

No, S haven't/ hasn't.

- Ex: Has she been well yet?
Cô ấy đã khỏe chưa?

Yes, she has.

Cô ấy khỏe rồi.

Động từ thường

Have/Has + S + Vp.p. + ...

Trả lời: Yes, S have/ has.

No, Shaven't/ hasn't.

Ex: Have you repaired my laptop yet?

Cậu sửa máy tính của tớ chưa?

No, I haven't.

Tớ vẫn chưa sửa.

II. CÁC CÁCH DÙNG CỦA HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH

1. Diễn tả một sự việc đã xảy ra và kết thúc tại một thời điểm trong quá khứ nhưng kết quả vẫn còn ở hiện tại

Ex: My mom has tidied up my room. It looks neat now.

Mẹ tôi vừa mới dọn phòng của tôi. Bây giờ trông nó rất gọn gàng.

I have finished my homework. I feel really tired now.

Tớ vừa hoàn thành xong bài tập về nhà. Bây giờ tớ thực sự cảm thấy rất mệt mỏi.

2. Diễn tả một sự việc đã xảy ra và vẫn còn tiếp diễn ở hiện tại

Ex: We have lived in this house for 10 years.

Chúng tôi đã sống ở ngôi nhà này được 10 năm rồi.

Mr. and Mrs. Smith have been married since last year.

Cô chú Smith đã là vợ chồng kể từ năm ngoái.

3. Diễn tả một sự việc đã xảy ra được bao nhiêu lần rồi tính đến thời điểm hiện tại.

Ex: I have watched this movie several times.

Tớ đã xem bộ phim này được mấy lần rồi.

I have been to Paris twice.

Tôi đã đến Paris hai lần rồi.

II. CÁC TRẠNG TỪ PHỔ BIẾN TRONG THÌ HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH

1. ever (đã, từng)

- Dùng trong câu khẳng định và nghi vấn, sau trợ động từ và trước động từ chính

Ex: This is the first time I have ever been to Paris.

Đây là lần đầu tiên tớ tới Paris.

Have you ever been to Paris?

Bạn đã tới Paris chưa?

2. never (chưa từng)

- Dùng trong câu khẳng định nhưng mang nghĩa phủ định, đứng sau trợ động từ và trước động từ chính

Ex: I have never been to Paris.

Tô chưa bao giờ đến Paris.

3. already (đã, rồi)

- Dùng trong câu khẳng định, sau trợ động từ và trước động từ chính

Ex: I have already been to Paris.

Tô đã đến Paris rồi.

4. yet (chưa)

- Dùng ở cuối câu nghi vấn và phủ định

Ex: I haven't been to Paris yet.

Tô vẫn chưa tới Paris.

Have you been to Paris yet?

Bạn đã tới Paris chưa?

4. since + mốc thời gian/ thời điểm bắt đầu (kể từ khi)

Ex: I have known Sam since 2010.

Tô biết Sam kể từ năm 2010.

5. for + khoảng thời gian được bao lâu rồi)

Ex: I have known Sam for three years.

Tôi đã biết Sam được ba năm rồi.

III. DANH ĐỘNG TỪ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN THỂ CÓ "TO" MIÊU TẢ CHỨC NĂNG

GERUND & TO-INFINITIVES FOR DESCRIPTION

1. Danh động từ

a. Danh động từ

Danh động từ là động từ được thêm đuôi **ing** và giữ **vai trò như một danh từ** trong câu.

Ex: Using an e-book reader is easy.

Việc sử dụng thiết bị đọc sách điện tử rất dễ dàng.

Trong câu trên, **Using** là một danh động từ.

A washing machine is used for making clothes clean.

Máy giặt được dùng cho việc làm sạch quần áo.

Trong câu này, **making** là một danh động từ.

Tuy nhiên, không phải tất cả các động từ thêm đuôi **ing** đều là danh động từ.

Ex: He is playing a new mobile game.

Cậu ấy đang chơi một trò chơi mới.

Trong câu này, **playing** được kết hợp với **is**, tạo thành dạng thức tiếp diễn của động từ **play**,

không phải một danh động từ.

b. Động từ nguyên thể có "to"

Động từ nguyên thể có **to** là động từ nguyên thể được thêm **to** ở trước nó.

Ex: You can use a laptop to work.

Bạn có thể sử dụng laptop để làm việc.

Trong câu này, **to work** là động từ nguyên thể có **to**.

A fridge is used to keep food fresh.

Tủ lạnh được dùng để giữ đồ ăn tươi ngon.

Trong câu này, **to keep** là một động từ nguyên thể có **to**.

2. Danh động từ và Động từ nguyên thể có “to” miêu tả chức năng của vật

Khi muốn miêu tả chức năng, mục đích của vật gì đó, các em có thể dùng cấu trúc với danh động từ và động từ nguyên thể.

a. Với gerund (danh động từ)

use something for +V-ing

Hoặc

Something is used for + V-ing

Cả 2 cấu trúc này đều mang nghĩa sử dụng cái gì để làm gì.

Ex: We use an electric cooker for cooking rice

An electric cooker is used for cooking rice,

Nồi cơm điện dùng để nấu cơm.

b. Với to-infinitive (động từ nguyên thể có “to”)

Các em có thể sử dụng 1 trong 2 công thức sau:

use something to V

Hoặc

Something is used to V

Cả 2 cấu trúc này cũng mang nghĩa: *sử dụng cái gì để làm gì.*

Ex: We use an electric cooker to cook rice.

An electric cooker is used to cook rice.

Nồi cơm điện dùng để nấu cơm.

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

I. The following noun groups and compound nouns have 2 parts. Find the word with a stress pattern DIFFERENT from the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1 A. email | B. tallboy | C. website | D. online game |
| 2 A. soft ware | B. national anthem | C. city life | D. video game |
| 3. A. traffic jam | B. alarm dock | C. white house | D. White House |
| 4. A. laptop | B. pencil case | C. software | D. gold brick |
| 5. A. traditional dress | B. Commonwealth | C. underworld | D. e-book |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose the word / phrase CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part.

1. I want to buy a printer but I'm afraid it's bulky.

A. small B. inconvenient C. expensive D. big and heavy

2. It's more economical to buy this car than that jet ski.

A. cost-effective B. expensive C. insensitive D. wasteful

3. You should store your data on Dropbox in case your computer collapses.

A. breaks down B. destroys C. runs out of power D. contains viruses

4. This technology has some drawbacks that need improving.

A. benefits B. disadvantages C. strong points D. qualities

5. The Ig Nobel prize is awarded to good-for-nothing inventions.

A. useless B. helpful C. practical D. applicable

6. This device imitates the movements of the mockingbirds.

A. inspires B. steals C. mimics D. contrasts

II. Complete the sentences using the given words.

correction pen

e-book reader

handheld

digital camera

economical

earbuds

1. If you have an ____ **e-book reader** ____, you don't have to bring all those heavy books in your bag.
2. Can I use a ____ **correction pen** ____ to cover errors in my writing?
3. A normal printer is more ____ **economical** ____ than a 3-D printer.
4. You should use this pair of ____ **earbuds** ____, others won't be able to hear it.
5. A ____ **digital camera** ____ allows us to view and edit photos easily.
6. Don't worry. This is a ____ **handheld** ____, so it's quite small and light.

III. Complete the sentences using the given words.

inventions

patent

inspired

portable

social networking site

vacuum cleaner

solar charger

versatile

1. A ____ **solar charger** ____ takes its energy from the sun.
2. A ____ **vacuum cleaner** ____ helps save a lot of energy doing housework.
3. Egg is a ____ **versatile** ____ food. You can boil, fry or make egg soup.
4. Japanese high-speed trains' design was ____ **inspired** ____ by the nose of the kingfisher.
5. This food processor is easily ____ **portable** _____. You can hold it with just one hand.
- 6 Vaccination has been considered among the most important ____ **inventions** ____ in medicine.
7. The young inventor obtained a ____ **patent** ____ on his latest invention last week.
8. Twitter is a popular ____ **social networking site** ____ in Western countries.

IV. Match each heading with its correct end.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. My brother has had his computer repaired. | A. She is reading it in her room. |
| 2. Mark has just lost his smartphone that he bought last week. | B. She takes a lot of beautiful photos of herself every day. |
| 3. My sister has downloaded her favorite e-book. | C. It works again now. |
| 4 Minh has bought a selfie stick. | D. He is so desperate now. |
| 5. Since the invention of the plane, | E. travelling long distances has been made so much easier than ever. |

1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. E

V. Choose the options that best fit the blanks.

1. I ____ this washing machine for five years now. It looks old, but it still works well.
 A. have B. had C. is having **D. have had**
2. Have you ever read the Wuthering Heights? - Oh. That's my favourite. I ____ it many times, at least four.
 A. read **B. have read** C. was reading D. used to read
3. People's lives ____ a lot thanks to the inventions of these devices.
 A. was changed B. has been changed **C. have changed** D. is changed
4. She ____ volleyball at high school but she didn't like it.
 A. has played **B. played** C. was playing D. has been playing
5. The first actual robot ____ invented in 1961.
A. was B. has been C. used to D. were
6. Where do you live? – I ____ in Boston. I ____ there for ten years now.
A. live – have lived B. live – am living C. have lived – live D. live – live
7. Until now, the disease ____ over thirty thousand people worldwide.
A. has killed B. killed C. kills D. is killing
8. Liverpool football club ____ 18 Premier League titles so far.
 A. won B. used to win C. win **D. has won**
9. I'm sorry. Mark isn't here now. He ____ to the post office.
 A. went B. goes C. has been **D. has gone**
10. ____ you ____ the shoplifter to the police yet?
 A. Do – report **B. Have – reported** C. Are – reporting D. When – reported

VI. Determine whether the following sentences are Correct or Incorrect.

1. Scientists have made significant achievements in medicine.

Correct

2. The storm uproots the trees, so we cannot travel this road now.

Incorrect

3. Our family has lived in this house when I was five years old.

Incorrect

4. People use vaccination for a long time to prevent certain diseases.

Incorrect

5. I have seen Julia three times this week. What a coincidence!

Correct

6. I feel so relieved now. My father has found the key I lost this morning.

Correct

7. I have had this laptop when I was a first year student.

Incorrect

8. I'm still working on my assignments. I haven't finished them yet.

Correct

VII. Choose the correct verbs to fill the blanks.

Brian called in sick yesterday morning. "You (1. call) **have called** in sick five times this month", said his frustrated boss. Brian replied, "I'm sorry. My son (2.start) **started** day care last month and he (3. be) **has been** sick since then. I am a reliable employee; and last year, I (4. not take) **didn't take** any sick day."

Brian's boss, in a soft voice, said, "It's true. You (5. always finish) **have always finished** your work on time and you (6. bring) **have brought** our company a lot of business since you (7. start) **started** working for us."

Brian said, "Last week, I showed Marlene the recent project I (8. work) **have worked** on. I (9. believe) **believe** she can help me, for she (10. work) **has worked** on similar projects since she was hired." "OK. Get lots of rest and we'll see you soon.", replied his relieved boss.

VIII. Give the correct forms of the verbs given.

1. Why are you always putting your clothes in the wrong place? I **have told** (tell) you so many times.

2. My favorite team **has lost / have lost** (lose) four matches since the beginning of the season.

3. Since the birth of smartphones, they **have replaced** (replace) basic phones in almost every part of the world.

4. We're having special chicken soup for dinner. I **bought** (buy) some fresh chicken on my way home yesterday.

5. The living room looks tidy now, my sister **has just cleaned** (just, clean) it.

6. Alberto **has broken** (break) his leg, so he can't play football in two months.

7. I haven't seen Alex for a long time. The last time we _____ **met** _____ (meet) was at high school.

IX. Fill the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs: inspire, not have, encourage, prefer, be

1. Teenagers now _____ **prefer** _____ chatting on the computers with their friends to meeting face to face.

2. I _____ **didn't have** _____ enough sleep last night, so I'm very tired now.

3. Since we first met at the conference, Jessica _____ **has encouraged** _____ me a lot in my career choice.

4. I _____ **have been** _____ to Spain twice, but I haven't visited Barcelona yet.

5. For centuries, nature _____ **has inspired** _____ many scientists and inventors in their great inventions.

X. Match each description with its correct picture.

1. This is usually used by students for calculating with numbers.

C



2. Young people use this with their smartphones to take pictures of themselves.

A



3. This appliance is used to store foods for a longer time than usual.

B



4. Busy people can use this to do exercise at home.

E



5. This is used for making homemade-yogurt.

F



D

6. This electric device is heated to make clothes smooth.

D



E

XI. Choose the best options to fill the banks.

1. This hammer is used ____ the glass in case of emergency.

A. to break

B. for break

C. breaking

2. A stethoscope is applied ____ the blood pressure of patients.

A. for measure

B. to measure

C. in measure

3. Insulin was introduced by scientists from the University of Toronto ____ diabetes.

A. to manage

B. for management

C. for manage

4. You can use a jet ski ____ on both land and water.

A. travel

B. for travelling

C. to travelling

5. The cat is used ____ in the yard in the afternoon.

A. for lying

B. to lie

C. to lying

6. Don't wear high heels ____ a long distance, they can hurt your feet.

A. for travelling

B. to travelling

C. travel

7. Remember to use sun cream ____ getting sunburn.

A. to avoid

B. for avoid

C. avoiding

8. Doctors make use of anesthetic ____ pain for patients during surgery.

A. relief

B. to relieve

C. for relieve

XII. Give the correct forms (V-ing or to-V) of the verbs given.

1. A smartwatch can be used for _____ **measuring** _____ (measure) your exercise efforts.

2. People use this electronic device ____ **to connect** _____ (connect) with other people all over the world.

3. This mobile application is used for recording and ____ **sending** _____ (send) distress signals.

4. An e-book reader is convenient; it is used _____ **to read** _____ (read) electronic books, newspapers or magazines.

5. Despite the convenience of motorbikes, many people ride their bicycle or walk _____ **to keep** _____ (keep) fit.
6. This machine is used for _____ **massaging** _____ (massage) at home.
7. We can use a memory card _____ **to store** _____ (store) a lot of music or photos.
8. This robot is designed for _____ **helping** _____ (help) old people with certain household chores.

XIII. Determine whether the following sentences are correct or incorrect.

1. This button is used to opening the suitcase.

Incorrect

2. You can use Facebook to connect with old friends or making new friends.

Incorrect

3. You should take some aspirins to get rid of your headache.

Correct

4. Study this data to gain some insights into the problem before writing.

Correct

5. Making better voice quality, use this microphone instead of that one.

Incorrect

6. People collect those samples for study the elements of the surface of the Moon.

Incorrect

XIV. Define ONE wrong word in each sentence.

1. This electric cooker is used to boil rice, not **make** rice porridge.
2. In Holland, people make use of windmills for **production** wind energy.
3. **Chopping** uncooked food, please use this separate knife.
4. This air conditioner is installed to keep it cool in summer and **making** it warm in cold winter.
5. You can use this to find the meaning of a word or **learning** some examples of it.
6. This massage chair is used mainly by the elderly to **relief** pain.

XV. Select the correct verbs to fill the blanks. There are two redundant verbs.

to reduce	for studying	to satisfy	for losing
to prevent	for encouraging	to increase	to cover

1. You mustn't use a correction pen _____ **to cover** _____ errors in this assignment.
2. Many young people use computers for playing games rather than _____ **for studying** _____?

3. Children are vaccinated _____ **to prevent** _____ certain common children diseases.
4. Doing karaoke is a good way _____ **to satisfy** _____ people's entertainment needs.
5. Don't abuse the use of that medicine _____ **for losing** _____ weight.
6. Birth control pill is used by many young women _____ **to reduce** _____ unwanted pregnancies.

C. READING

I. Read the passage and do the tasks below

Nowadays, amid the storming development of high-tech devices such as smartphones or e-book readers, people seem to neglect the existence of certain inventions that date back thousands of years. One of those is the mirror.

People grew a desire to see themselves as they saw their reflections in the surface of water. Around the 600s BC, the first mirrors were made from natural materials such as polished stones. After a while, people started to use bronze, gold and silver to make mirrors. These metals were heavy, so mirrors had very modest sizes. Ruling-class people, especially ladies, used them as a fashionable accessory. Hardly did they go out without a mirror. In the 1st century, the first glass mirrors were invented by the Romans and were made bigger to allow people to look at the whole body. However, not everyone cherished the mirror. Some people were irritated to find themselves ugly looking at the mirror, and there were rumors that what they saw in the mirror were reflections of sins and demons.

Nowadays, despite technological advancement, mirrors still play important roles in various modern-day fields, such as surgery, transport, architecture and so on. In fact, mirrors are utilised in technology and have inspired the inventions of several devices such as cameras or satellites.

Part 1. Determine whether the following statements are True, False or Not Given.

1. People appreciate inventions that date back a very long time.
A. True B. False C. Not Given
2. The images produced by the first mirrors were not as clear as by the surface of water.
A. True B. False C. Not Given
3. Only rich people could buy mirrors made from metals.
A. True B. False C. Not Given
4. Mirrors from glass were first made by the Romans.
A. True B. False C. Not Given
5. Everyone was happy to see themselves in mirrors.
A. True B. False C. Not Given

6. Some people believed that mirror reflected negative things.

A. True

B. False

C. Not Given

7. Due to modern technology, mirrors are not applied in many fields these days.

A. True

B. False

C. Not Given

Part 2. Choose the best answers to the following questions.

1. When were the first mirrors made?

A. In the first century

B. In the 600s B.C.

C. Four thousand years ago

2. What were the first materials for making mirrors?

A. Stones

B. Glass

C. Metal such as bronze, gold

and silver

3. What was TRUE about metal mirrors?

A. They were very heavy.

B. They were small.

C. They were extremely

expensive.

4. What was TRUE about glass mirrors?

A. They were cheaper than metal mirrors.

B. They were not favored because they broke easily.

C. They were bigger than metal mirrors.

5. Who used mirrors as a fashion item?

A. Girls and women from powerful families

B. Girl and women from all families

C. Young and unmarried girls

II. Choose the best answer to fill in the blank.

Several famous people are left-handed, (1) ____ Julius Caesar, Napoleon, and Albert Einstein. Queen Victoria of England was also left-handed, (2) ____ Prince Charles. Paul McCartney of the Beatles plays (3) ____ guitar the opposite way from other guitarists because he is left-handed. Marilyn Monroe, the famous American star was also a leftie. Are you a leftie (4) ____ you write with your right hand? To understand (5) ____ it is necessary to look at the brain. The brain is (6) ____ into two hemispheres. The left hemisphere of the brain (7) ____ the right side of the body, and the right hemisphere controls the left side. Both of the sides of the body receive the same information (8) ____ the brain because the two hemispheres are connected. (9) ____, in the right handed people, the left hemisphere is stronger. In the left-handed people, it is the right hemisphere (10) ____ is stronger.

1. A. such as

B. so as

C. so that

D. such that

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 2. A. is so and | B. and | C. and so is | D. and is so |
| 3. A. a | B. an | C. the | D. no article |
| 4. A. as | B. because | C. even | D. even though |
| 5. A. leftie | B. lefthandedness | C. left-handed | D. lefthander |
| 6. A divided | B. cut | C. subtracted | D. separated |
| 7. A. conquers | B. controls | C. contrasts | D. consists |
| 8. A. on | B. to | C. from | D. for |
| 9. A. In order that | B. Therefore | C. Never | D. However |
| 10. A. who | B. whom | C. that | D. where |

III. Choose the sentence which is closest in meaning with the given one.

- Second prize was awarded to an unknown author from Pastra.
 - An award of second prize was given an unknown author from Pastra.
 - An unknown author from Pastra was awarded second prize.
 - An unknown author from Pastra was awarded with the second prize.
 - Unknown author was awarded second.
- I used to live alone.
 - I lived by myself but I no longer do it now.
 - I lived by myself and I was used to it.
 - I am used to living alone.
 - I was used to living by myself.
- I was late for work because the bus broke down.
 - As the bus was broken, I was late for work.
 - Due to a bus break-down, I was late for work.
 - Since the bus broke into pieces, I was late for work.
 - Due to the fact that the bus was broken, I was late for work.
- "If I were you, I would get in touch with the boss.", he said.
 - He suggested that I would get in touch with the boss.
 - He suggested keeping in touch with the boss.
 - He recommended that I should get in touch with the boss.
 - He wished he were me so that he could get in touch with the boss.
- I'm not very good at gardening, I'm afraid.
 - I'm not much of a gardener, I'm afraid.
 - I regret that I bad at gardening.

C. I'm scared to work in the garden.
the garden.

D. I am afraid of working in

6. We started cooking for the party four hours ago.

A. We began to cook for the party for four hours.

B. We have been cooking for the party for four hours.

C. We cooked for the party for four hours.

D. We cooked for the party four hours ago.

7. The boatmen were able to escape just before the boat sank.

A. The boatmen could escape just before the boat sank.

B. The boatmen attempted to escape just before the boat sank

C. The boatmen succeeded to escape just before the boat sank.

D. The boatmen managed to escape just before the boat sank.

8. It may be possible for you to go there without a visa.

A. It may not be impossible for you to go there without a visa.

B. You may be possible to go there without a visa.

C. It may be unnecessary for you to get a visa to go there.

D. You may find it possible to get a visa to go there.

9. Please don't use the shower after midnight.

A. Would you mind not to use the shower after midnight?

B. Would you like to use the shower after midnight?

C. I don't want you to use the shower.

D. Would you mind not using the shower after midnight?

10. It would be better if you did not bring your dog in here.

A. I'd rather you hadn't brought you dog in here.

B. I wish you hadn't brought your dog in here.

C. I'd rather you didn't bring your dog in here.

D. You have brought your dog in here, which is against the rules.

11. The car is more expensive than it ought to be.

A. The car ought to be expensive.

B. The car shouldn't be so cheap.

C. The car looks like an inexpensive automobile.

D. The car costs more than it should.

12. Jane hardly ever enjoys eating vegetables.

- A. She enjoys eating vegetables. B. She has fun growing vegetables.
C. She almost never eats vegetables. D. She sells vegetables for living.

13. We had several guests at our house over the holidays.

- A. We were guests at our friend's house.
B. Several people visited us during the holidays.
C. The holidays were over by the time our guests arrived.
D. We guessed that several people would come.

14. I can't believe that he did it without telling me first.

- A. I can't believe what he told me.
- B. He told me that he did it first.
- C. He didn't believe that I told him first.
- D. He didn't inform me before he did it.

15. It is too late to change it, so leave it the way it is.

- A. It can't be altered at this point.
finds it out.
- C. We can't leave it the way it is.
before he leaves.
- B. We should change it before he
finds it out.
- D. He should approve the changes
before he leaves.

D. WRITING

I. Write a paragraph on benefits of an invention

Đáp án gợi ý

She asked him to bring her a cup of tea.

3. As soon as he arrived in London, he phoned his parents.

No sooner had he arrived in London than he phoned his parents.

4. I don't think he cares about his employees.

At no time do I think he cares about his employees.

5. There is no point in persuading him to change his mind.

It's not worth persuading him to change his mind.

6. This is the first time I have spoken in front of so many people.

I was not used to speaking in front of so many people.

7. It's Lan's duty to type the report and send it to the manager.

Lan is supposed to type the report and send it to the manager.

8. My father let the children splash around in the pool for a while yesterday.

My father allowed the children to splash around in the pool for a while yesterday.

9. People believe that the climate is changing.

The climate is believed to be changing.

10. If he hadn't helped me, I wouldn't have finished my report on time.

But for his help, I wouldn't have finished my report on time.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

A. PHONETICS

I. Find the word which has the underlined part pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. gram <u>ma</u> r | B. da <u>m</u> age | C. dra <u>m</u> a | D. mam <u>m</u> al |
| 2. A. ope <u>r</u> ate | B. pe <u>r</u> sonal | C. inte <u>r</u> act | D. <u>r</u> eceiver |
| 3. A. <u>f</u> oot | B. mo <u>o</u> n | C. <u>f</u> ood | D. po <u>o</u> l |
| 4. A. prote <u>cti</u> on | B. educa <u>ti</u> on | C. excep <u>ti</u> on | D. ques <u>ti</u> on |
| 5. A. end <u>a</u> nger | B. con <u>d</u> ition | C. han <u>d</u> kerchief | D. <u>d</u> angerous |

II. Find the word whose stressed pattern is different from the others in each group.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>a</u> fternoon | B. to <u>m</u> orrow | C. ba <u>n</u> ana | D. um <u>b</u> rella |
| 2. A. so <u>r</u> row | B. pa <u>s</u> sion | C. na <u>t</u> ive | D. co <u>m</u> plaint |
| 3. A. br <u>i</u> lliant | B. har <u>b</u> our | C. <u>m</u> ature | D. diff <u>i</u> cult |
| 4. A. go <u>v</u> ernment | B. di <u>s</u> appoint | C. au <u>d</u> ience | D. ta <u>l</u> ented |
| 5. A. im <u>p</u> ortant | B. ex <u>p</u> erience | C. di <u>f</u> ferent | D. co <u>n</u> tinue |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) which best completes each sentence.

1. Never ____ off till tomorrow what you can do today.

- A. put B. set C. do D. turn

2. Do you need some more paper? – No, thanks. I ____.

- A. have still a piece left B. have a piece still left
C. still have a piece left D. have left a piece still

3. Not until he came into light ____ him.

- A. I only recognized B. did I recognized C. did I recognize D. I didn't recognize

4. I was very tired; ____, I determined to walk on to the next village.

- A. therefore B. however C. and D. for

5. ____ Mary, give her my love.

- A. If you saw B. Should you see C. Do you see D. By seeing

6. ____ more carefully, he wouldn't have been in the hospital now.

- A. Had he driven B. If he drove C. If he drives D. If he hadn't driven

7. More than 50 films ____ in Hanoi since June.

- A. have been shown B. were shown C. show D. has been shown

8. You must lend me the money for the trip. ____, I won't be able to go.

- A. Consequently B. Nevertheless C. Otherwise D. Although

9. - When can I take my holiday? – ____.

- A. It's for you. B. How you like. C. After your wish. D. It's up to you

10. I shall do the job to the best of my ____.

- A. capacity B. knowledge C. talent D. ability

II. In this letter there are 10 words which should not be there. Write your answers on the numbered blanks.

Example: 0 → enjoying

Dear Roberto,

0. enjoying

1. _____ will _____

Thank you for your letter. I am glad to hear you are enjoying well. When I will have some free time, perhaps I'll come to London to see you, and then we can go out for a meal together somewhere. I've just got come back from a trip to Lisbon. My father has just been opened a big new factory in Portugal, and he had wanted me to help him with marketing. Lisbon is said to be a very pretty beautiful city, but I didn't have the chance to see much of it!

Dad always makes me work hard! We had went to lots of business meetings, and I met all the staff. I would have been some more useful if I had learned Portuguese instead of French at school! But luckily they are all speak very good English. In fact, Dad's partner was invited me to lunch, and promised to teach me Portuguese, so maybe I'll be accept his offer next time. On my way home, the plane was delayed for four hours because of fog. I think Samantha was waiting at the airport all that time for me. It must be true love!

Keep in touch,

Best wishes,

Thomas

2. _____ **got / come** _____
3. _____ **been** _____
4. _____ **had** _____
5. _____ **pretty** _____
6. _____ **had** _____
7. _____ **some** _____
8. _____ **are** _____
9. _____ **was** _____
10. _____ **be** _____

III. Give the correct form of the words in CAPITAL to complete the sentences.

1. There is too much _____ **violence** _____ in this movie. VIOLENT
2. Dolphins sometimes are killed when they are _____ **accidentally** _____ entrapped in fishing nets. ACCIDENT
3. It is a good book because it is very _____ **informative** _____. INFORM
4. Third time lucky! After two _____ **unsuccessful** _____ attempts, Mark's finally passed his driving test. SUCCEED
5. He's so nice. It's a _____ **pleasure** _____ working for him. PLEASE
6. One disadvantage of the Internet is that it takes time away from _____ **activities** _____ such as watching TV and reading. ACT
7. He is behaving in a very _____ **mysterious** _____ way. MYSTERY

8. My teacher is very _____ **knowledgeable** _____ about the history of Vietnam. KNOW
9. Don't eat that fruit. It is _____ **poisonous** _____. POISON
10. Tim is one of the _____ **participants** _____ on a boat trip on Lake Michigan. PARTICIPATE

C. READING

I. Read the following passage and fill in each blank with a suitable word.

Dolphins are not fish. They are mammals (1) _____ **that / which** _____ live in water. Dolphins are (2) _____ **among** _____ the most intelligent animals on earth. Although they can be found in (3) _____ **all** _____ oceans in the world, dolphins prefer coastal waters and bays. The size of dolphins can vary greatly. The smallest dolphin is just about 50 kg in (4) _____ **weight** _____ and 1.2 metres in length while (5) _____ **the** _____ largest one can weigh up to 8,200 kg and is 100 metres (6) _____ **long** _____. Dolphins eat (7) _____ **mainly** _____ fish. A female dolphin gives birth (8) _____ **to** _____ one calf every two years after a (9) _____ **gestation** _____ period of eleven or twelve months. A dolphin can normally live from twenty-five to sixty-five years and some species of dolphins can even live longer. Dolphin populations are at risk (10) _____ **due** _____ to the pollution of their habitat and accidental entrapment in fishing nets.

II. Read the following passage and decide which option A, B, C or D best fits each sentence.

The last two decades have seen enormous changes in the way people's (1) _____ are affected by IT. Twenty years ago, few people had access to a computer while today (2) _____ people use them at work, home or school and use of e-mail and the Internet is an every day event.

These developments have brought many (3) _____ to our lives. E-mail makes communication much easier and more immediate. This has numerous benefits for business, commerce, and education. The World Wide Web means that information on every conceivable subject is now (4) _____ to us. Clearly, for many people this has made life much easier and more convenient.

However, not all the effects of the new technology have been beneficial. Many people feel that the (5) _____ use of e-mail is destroying traditional forms of communication such as letter writing, telephone and face-to-face conversation. With ever increasing use of information technology these (6) _____ elements are likely to increase in the future.

In addition, the huge size of the Web means it is almost (7) _____ to control and regulate. This has led to many concerns regarding children (8) _____ unsuitable websites. Yet perhaps the

biggest threat to IT in years to come will be the computer (9) ____ -more sophisticated or more destructive strains are almost inevitable.

In conclusion, developments in IT have brought many benefits, (10) ____ I believe developments relating to new technology in the future are likely to produce many negative effects that will need to be addressed very carefully.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. live | B. lives | C. living | D. life |
| 2. A. most | B. most of | C. most of the | D. almost |
| 3. A. services | B. uses | C. benefits | D. effects |
| 4. A. free | B. convenient | C. unused | D. available |
| 5. A. widespread | B. immediate | C. particular | D. continued |
| 6. A. positive | B. negative | C. careless | D. trivial |
| 7. A. possible | B. impractical | C. likely | D. impossible |
| 8. A. accessing | B. approaching | C. entering | D. getting |
| 9. A. disease | B. program | C. virus | D. software |
| 10. A. so | B. moreover | C. therefore | D. yet |

III. Read the passage below and choose the correct option marked A, B, C or D to answer the questions.

I left school at fifteen. I was an academically bright lad who was urged by some of his teachers not to leave, but I wanted out to see life, and I didn't want to reach beyond the expectation of the friends who left school with me. I worked for a year in a laundry, as a van-boy delivering dry cleaning,

On turning sixteen I applied to be, and eventually began working as a trainee heating engineer with a medium-sized company in East Belfast. The first months were boring. The work was not demanding but I found the environment of the factory annoying. I remember my first week. I left the factory to meet up with a friend and I realized that I had forgotten to collect my wages. My friend thought I was an idiot. After many months working in the factory, I was sent off to college to study for my Certificate in Heating Engineering. I found the classroom routine unpleasant and I remember feeling a sense of limitation. Five years of this- to end up as a heating engineer and continue with that for the foreseeable future was not an exciting thought.

Although I had left school against the advice of my teachers I had, without telling anyone, tried to continue my studies in literature at evening classes. It was a boring walk from one end of the city to another and to sit amongst adults was confusing. I was the youngest in the class, so the companionship I knew at school was absent. I put up with **it** for a short period. It

was too long a walk on cold winter's nights and it was hard to concentrate on Shakespeare with wet shoes and soaking trousers. So I carried on reading books and started writing poetry at home.

By chance, I won some prizes and literary awards in national competitions. A young woman from a TV company came to the college one day. She told me in the quiet of the corridor that I had won a national poetry award. I stared at her in astonishment and disbelief. She wanted to make a short film about me, to which I said: 'No, I couldn't do that? Not that I had any real excuse. I was just frightened. She eventually persuaded me that I should do it the following day.

1. One reason why the writer left school at the age of fifteen was that he ____.

- A. thought he would get a good job
- B. didn't get on well with his teachers
- C. had no other choice
- D. didn't want to be different from his friends

What did the writer feel while he was training to be a heating engineer?

- A. He was capable of doing something better.
- B. He preferred the college to the factory.
- C. He didn't receive enough money.
- D. He might fail to qualify as a heating engineer.

3. What did the writer find when he attended the evening classes?

- A. The behavior of the other students annoyed him.
- B. He was out of place among the other students.
- C. The studies were less interesting than he expected.
- D. He learned more when he studied at home.

4. What does "it" in 'I put up with it for a short period.' refer to?

- A. literature
- B. the walk
- C. the evening class
- D.

companionship

5. Why at first did the writer refuse to appear in the film?

- A. He thought someone else should be in it.
- B. He wanted more time to think about it.
- C. He felt he didn't deserve it.
- D. He was taken by surprise.

D. WRITING

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one. Using the word given in block letters and this word MUST NOT be changed in any way.

1. It was easy for us to get tickets for the concert. (NO)

We had no difficulty (in) getting tickets for the concert.

2. They think the burglar got in through the bathroom. (THOUGHT)

The burglar is thought to have got / It is thought that the burglar got in through the bathroom.

3. Jim does not intend to give up his hobby. (INTENTION)

Jim has no intention of giving up his hobby.

4. Scarcely had the man left when the bomb exploded. (NO SOONER)

No sooner had the man left than the bomb exploded.

5. Most people regard him as being the best man for the job. (WIDELY)

He is widely regarded as being the best man for the job.

MIDDLE TERM TEST - KEY

I. Choose the word which has the underlined part pronounced differently from that of the rest.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>modest</u> | B. <u>contest</u> | C. <u>suggest</u> | D. <u>intestine</u> |
| 2. A. <u>fortunate</u> | B. <u>considerate</u> | C. <u>nominate</u> | D. <u>passionate</u> |
| 3. A. <u>movement</u> | B. <u>president</u> | C. <u>extent</u> | D. <u>instrument</u> |
| 4. A. <u>circulate</u> | B. <u>create</u> | C. <u>indicate</u> | D. <u>appropriate</u> |
| 5. A. <u>statement</u> | B. <u>movement</u> | C. <u>evident</u> | D. <u>comment</u> |

II. Choose the suitable words to complete the sentences below.

donations	volunteer	handheld	disabilities
disadvantaged	inspiration	charity organization	drawbacks

1. Despite some _____ **drawbacks** _____ of this vaccine, people have to use it because there are no other choices available.
2. Like artists, inventors also rely on nature as a rich source of _____ **inspiration** _____.
3. This _____ **charity organization** _____ was set up to protect children and women in war-torn areas.
4. Princess Diana was active in helping _____ **disadvantaged** _____ children when alive.
5. This food processor is too bulky. You should get a _____ **handheld** _____ like mine.
6. Laura is a _____ **volunteer** _____ teacher. She teaches handicapped children English for free.
7. Our charity calls for _____ **donations** _____ from all people.

8. A lot of international volunteers provide support for Vietnamese children with mental and physical _____ **disabilities** _____.

III. Use the endings: -ing, -ed, -ful, or-less of the words in brackets to complete the following sentences.

1. My sister is _____ **disappointed** _____ (disappoint) with their service.
2. This website is _____ **useful** _____ (use), as I can learn a lot of things and make friends.
3. My younger brother is very _____ **excited** _____ (excite) about his first trip to Da Nang.
4. The team has tried their best, so they are now _____ **hopeful** _____ (hope) about the result.
5. He is such a _____ **boring** _____ (bore) person that he doesn't have a girlfriend.
6. I didn't like the foods at that restaurant, especially the soup. It was _____ **tasteless** _____ (taste).

IV. Choose the best options to fill the blanks.

1. When the children _____, it suddenly began to rain.
A. were playing B. played C. have been playing
2. Your hair looks terrific! _____ you _____ a haircut?
A. Had - got B. Have - just got C. When - got
3. I _____ to Da Nang twice, but I still get a lot excited whenever visiting the city.
A. went B. have gone C. have been
4. While my younger sister was studying in her room, someone _____ our house.
A. was breaking into B. broke into C. break into
5. My grandparents are not used _____ technological devices.
A. to using B. for using C. to use
6. This is the second time I _____ a car accident.
A. witness B. witnessed C. have witnessed
7. While the guests _____ the party, the servants _____ more foods and drinks.
A. were enjoying - prepared B. enjoyed – were preparing C. were enjoying - were preparing
8. X-rays are a modern tool that doctors use _____ malign tumors.
A. for treat B. for treating C. to treating
9. _____ your mobile phone and _____ electricity, you can get a solar charger.
A. To recharge – saving B. For recharging - save C. To recharge - save
10. Hi, Anna. Are you going to play badminton now? - Sorry, I _____ my homework yet.
A. don't finish B. haven't finished C. didn't finish

V. Decide whether the following sentences are Correct or Incorrect.

1. This mobile application is installed for taking photos and edit them.
A. Correct **B. Incorrect**
2. When we were reading an e-book, we got an e-mail from our aunt.
A. Correct B. Incorrect
3. Andrea and Alice are married for fifteen years now.
A. Correct **B. Incorrect**
4. I have known Trung when I was a high school student.
A. Correct **B. Incorrect**
5. The thick snow blocked the main road, so we have to take another route now.
A. Correct **B. Incorrect**
6. Since the start of the new school year, our school has had a lot of activities to protect the environment.
A. Correct B. Incorrect
7. Brian was painting the wall while he fell off and broke his ankle.
A. Correct **B. Incorrect**
8. Old people with hearing problems rely on this device to hear better.
A. Correct B. Incorrect

VI. Choose the best answers to the following questions.

Music has been integral to our lives. Not all types of music have favourable effects, for example, if it is too loud or noisy or it distracts us from our work. However, in general, surprising benefits for health of music exposure have been discovered.

Overall, music has beneficial effects in pain relief. Listening to music can reduce sensation caused by chronic pain by up to 21% and depression by 25%. Music therapy, therefore, has been applied together with medication to reduce pain during childbirth and surgeries.

Research also shows that music also modifies heartbeat and blood pressure within a positive range. The heart beats faster as we listen to lively music and when the music slows, so do our heart and breath rate. In another study, old people suffering from high blood pressure reported significantly lower blood pressure as a result of listening to calm music after 30 minutes.

Apart from all those benefits, other effects are related to better sleep, strengthened memory and better general health. Most researchers conclude that our preference of music doesn't play the main role, but the tempo and the theme of the music we are exposed to are the most important factors that affect the remedy results.

1. What is the best title for the passage?
 - A. How music affects our brain
 - B. Music can reduce pain
 - C. Helpful health effects gained from music of music
 - D. Emotional and physical benefits
2. What is TRUE according to the passage?
 - A. All types of music can produce positive results on health.
 - B. Music hasn't replaced medicines during childbirth.
 - C. 25% of sensation caused by pain can be reduced by music.
 - D. Lively music is not good for heartbeat.
3. How does slow music modify heartbeat?
 - A. It makes the heart beat faster.
 - B. It makes heartbeat slow.
 - C. It makes our heart beat slowly and then fast.
 - D. It doesn't actually make any changes to heartbeat.
4. What is the effect of music on people with high blood pressure?
 - A. Their blood pressure is slightly lowered.
 - B. Their blood pressure is greatly lowered.
 - C. Their blood pressure is lowered after listening to exciting music.
 - D. They can take less medicine.
5. What is NOT TRUE according to the passage?
 - A. We only achieve the best results when listening to our favourite type of music.
 - B. Music can help us have better memory.
 - C. Music can improve our general health.
 - D. Researchers have determined the most important factors in music therapy.
6. What are the most important elements in music therapy?
 - A. The speed and theme of the music
 - B. The rhythm and sound of the music
 - C. The type and sound of the music
 - D. The rhythm and theme of the music

VII. Write A, B or C. Which passage mentions ...?

A: I'm a business manager, and I just can't figure out how my life will be if there's no Internet. Technology and the Internet have made things easier for me in my job. For example, my team and I make use of video conferencing when I'm on a trip abroad. I can't explain why some

people are against technology. My wife and I usually argue about my staring at the smartphone all the time. It's always our biggest source of disagreements.

B: When my husband and I gave our children a laptop as a birthday present last year, we didn't expect that they could be so much into it. I wish we hadn't given it to them. They spend, in my opinion, too much time surfing the Internet and playing video games. I am afraid if this continues, their study results will be badly impacted. We have tried to warn them many times, but that just doesn't work. I wish they were little and controllable again.

C: I'm eighty years old now, older than the Internet and any computers you've seen. I used to be against technology. That was not because I'm slow in it, but because in our time, we didn't have to rely on such things. But that has changed! I have two granddaughters and one grandson, and all of them are studying abroad. The fastest and most convenient way for us to keep in touch is the tablet that they bought me. I love spending thirty minutes a day in front of the tablet talking with them.

1. a changed opinion on technology – _____ **C** _____
2. things that make one's work become easier – _____ **A** _____
3. quarrels with someone over the use of a technological device – _____ **A** _____
4. a specific amount of time spent in front of a technological device – _____ **C** _____
5. inability to understand why some people hate technology – _____ **A** _____
6. regretting a past action – _____ **B** _____
7. a worry about a bad consequence that may happen – _____ **B** _____
8. independence on the Internet and computers – _____ **C** _____

VIII. Choose the options that best fit the blanks.

1. ____ you ____ Central Park in New York yet?
A. Do - visit B. Did – visit **C. Have – visited** D. were - visiting
2. I ____ three novels by Charles Dickens so far.
A. have read B. read C. am reading D. was reading
3. Thanks to these inventions, our lives ____ both positively and negatively.
A. has changed **B. have changed** C. were changed D. are changed
4. Arriving home, Linda opened the door, ____ the lights and lay on the sofa.
A. turned on B. was turning on C. turning D. turn
5. Since the birth of vaccination, people ____ from fewer diseases.

A. are suffering B. suffer C. have suffered D. are going to suffer

6. At seven p.m. yesterday, I _____ in my room. Suddenly, I heard a very big noise.

A. study B. studied C. had been studying D. was studying

7. She _____ in six different countries, so she knows a lot about cultures and their people's ways of life.

A. has lived B. lived C. lives D. is living

IX. Give the correct forms of the verbs given: change, bake, go, play, see, run, be absent, not pay

1. Since the plane was invented, it _____ **has changed** _____ the world in various ways.
2. When we arrived home, the children _____ **were playing** _____ in the backyard.
3. After sending an e-mail to my cousin, I turned off my tablet and _____ **went** _____ to bed.
4. I _____ **was not paying** _____ much attention to the teacher when she suddenly called me.
5. Andy _____ **was absent** _____ from class last week because he went to London.
6. This is the first time I _____ **have seen** _____ Laura enjoy herself so much.
7. I _____ **ran** _____ across Kristy when I was checking in at the airport.
8. This microwave is used for heating foods and _____ **baking** _____.

X. Choose ONE wrong word in each sentence.

1. Last night, I was writing wedding invitations **while** my ex-boyfriend called me. → **when**
2. We visited the charity, **talking** to their manager and gave them the donations. → **talked**
3. To **recording** your voice, you can download a mobile application. → **record**
4. He **putted** on a thick coat and went out in the snowstorm to find his dog. → **put**
5. Half of the school's students are not used to **follow** the new winter rules. → **following**

XI. Decide whether the following statements are True or False or Not Given.

International Student Volunteers (ISV) is a California-based non-profit volunteer organization. Since 2002, more than 35,000 students have joined ISV to volunteer and make a difference during their summer break. One of ISV's programs, High School Program (HSP), combining volunteer work and adventure travel, is an 18-day program for high school students aged 15-18. Since its first launch in 2007 in Australia for the first time, HSP has provided opportunities for students to make a difference to communities and those in need while learning about responsibility and global issues.

Each group of students is led by a seasoned ISV leader, and accompanied by a High School leader (either teacher or coach) throughout their trip. HSP's regional staff are available to provide timely help. Students can live, travel and learn in a fun environment. There are a lot of activities that build good characters and inspire students to contribute their efforts and time to communities. For a couple of days, students can visit local areas and learn about their cultures or difficulties faced by local people. For the other days, they can join adventure activities to step out of their comfort zone and challenge themselves.

High school students can choose among three countries - Costa Rica, Dominican Republic or Thailand to spend their trip. HSP intends to expand their network to other countries. If you're a high school student, give it a shot!

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| 1. HSP was introduced for the first time in 2002. | False |
| 2. The HSP program lasts eighteen days. | True |
| 3. There are three people directly in charge of each group of students. | False |
| 4. HSP is the mix of volunteering and adventure tourism. | True |
| 5. Students help protect the local natural environment. | Not given |
| 6. Students can now go on HSP trips to five countries. | False |

XII. Choose the suitable words to complete the sentences below.

breadwinners	smash	household	instrumental	sugary
--------------	-------	-----------	--------------	--------

- Soft drinks, a type of **sugary** drinks, can cause some diseases related to teeth and bones.
- The Chamberlains share **household** duties equally, so they have few quarrels over these.
- Both Mr. and Mrs. Nelson are the **breadwinners** of their family. They both work to support their family financially.
- You should try listening to some **instrumental** music before sleep.
- His debut album became a **smash** hit in many European countries in 2005.

XIII. Choose the options that best fit the blanks.

- The plane ____ in London at 9:15 on Sunday morning. Will you pick me up at Terminal 3?
 A. will land B. is going to land **C. lands** D. is landing
- A: I am dying of thirst. - B: OK. Wait a second. I ____ you some water.
A. will bring B. am going to bring C. am bringing D. bring
- You can wait for Lan, but I don't think she ____.

- A. is going to turn up B. won't turn up C. will turn up D. is turning up
4. Lindy and Alex ____ their first anniversary tomorrow evening. Have you been invited yet?
A. will celebrate B. are celebrating C. celebrate D. will have celebrated
5. Peter ____ the exam. He hasn't done any revision yet.
A. doesn't pass B. didn't pass C. isn't passing D. won't pass
6. John always goes to school by bus, but this week he ____ his brother's motorbike.
A. is riding B. will ride C. rides D. is going to ride
7. Please don't hesitate ____ me at 95784887 if you have any further questions.
A. reaching B. to call C. calling D. reach
8. He tried to persuade me ____ Jane's party, but I refused ____.
A. to attend - coming B. attending - coming C. attend - to come D. to attend - to come
9. My grandfather is eighty years old, ____ he does exercise even more regularly than me.
A. yet B. so C. but D. Both A & C are correct
10. I didn't notice anyone ____ into your flat last night. Let's check the security camera.
A. broke B. to break C. breaking D. break

XIV. Choose the underlined part which is incorrect.

1. Our cat and dog will be took care of by our next-door neighbor.
A B C D
2. I expect seeing my long-lost friend Adam in Berlin on this trip. It's been too long.
A B C D
3. I didn't have enough patience waiting for Jenny. She's always turning up late.
A B C D
4. A new school is constructed since last January, and they expect it will have been completed by the start of the new school year.
A B C D
5. She is beautiful and talented, but her parents don't let her to take part in that beauty contest.

A B

C

D

6. Andy is able to attend Edinburg University, or I think he may choose to attend Princeton.
That's his long-held

A

B

C

D

ambition.

XV. Choose the words CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined parts.

1. They are going to eliminate four of the eight contestants tonight.

A. receive

B. choose

C. disqualify

D. allow

2. This round is the most demanding in the competition, so you must prepare well.

A. decisive

B. important

C. easy

D. difficult

3. That young writer has conquered several writing competitions in California.

A. taken part in

B. won

C. held

D. appeared

4. This is the best treatment we can give her for the time being.

A. remedy

B. favor

C. observation

D. diet

5. Little John is having an eating disorder.

A. illness

B. untidiness

C. disobedience

D. cleanliness

XVI. Reorder the words to make complete sentences.

1. apply / writing / the / to / a / at / am / job / for / I / charity / volunteer / your / of /

I am writing to apply for the job of a volunteer at your charity.

2. experience / doing / work / I / office / have / of

I have experience of doing office work.

3. social / sites / use / and / information / people / friends / get / networking / to / make

People use social networking sites to get information and make friends.

4. watch / social / all you / can / variety / and / join / programmes / of / networks

You can watch a variety of programmes and join social networks.

Unit 6. GENDER EQUALITY - KEY

PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

address	(v):	giải quyết
affect	(v):	ảnh hưởng
caretaker	(n):	người chăm sóc
challenge	(n):	thách thức

discrimination	(n):	phân biệt đối xử
effective	(adj):	có hiệu quả
eliminate	(v):	xóa bỏ
encourage	(v):	động viên, khuyến khích
enrol	(v):	đăng ký nhập học
enrolment	(n):	sự đăng ký nhập học
equal	(adj):	ngang bằng
equality	(n):	ngang bằng, bình đẳng
inequality	(n):	không bình đẳng
force	(v):	bắt buộc, ép buộc
gender	(n):	giới, giới tính
government	(n):	chính phủ
income	(n):	thu nhập
limitation	(n):	sự hạn chế, giới hạn
loneliness	(n):	sự cô đơn
opportunity	(n):	cơ hội
personal	(adj):	cá nhân
progress	(n):	tiến bộ
property	(n):	tài sản
pursue	(v):	theo đuổi
qualified	(adj):	đủ khả năng/ năng lực
remarkable	(adj):	đáng chú ý, phi thường
right	(n):	quyền lợi
sue	(v):	kiện
treatment	(n):	sự đối xử
violent	(adj):	có tính bạo lực, hung dữ
violence	(n):	bạo lực; dữ dội
wage	(n):	tiền lương
workforce	(n):	lực lượng lao động

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. MODALS (ĐỘNG TỪ KHUYẾT THIỂU)

Modals (Động từ khuyết thiếu)	Functions (Chức năng)	Examples (Ví dụ)
can, could (có thể)	ability (khả năng)	I can't work as hard as she does.
should, ought to (nên)	advice or duty (lời khuyên, bổn phận)	Boys should / ought to do housework. We should / ought to meet more often.
must (phải)	duty (bổn phận)	Students must do their homework.
can, could, may (có thể)	permission (cho phép)	You can have a day off if you're tired. May I go out?
may, might, can, could (có lẽ, có thể)	possibility (khả năng)	We can/could /may/ might / go out for dinner tonight.
can't, mustn't, may not (không thể không được, có lẽ không)	prohibition (cấm)	She can't go out in such cold weather. You mustn't cheat in the exams. You may not wear slippers to school.
may, will, would	request (yêu cầu)	Would you mind if I sat here? Will you please take a message?

II. MODAL VERBS IN PASSIVE VOICE

ĐỘNG TỪ KHUYẾT THIỂU TRONG CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG

Active:

	can / may / must	
	have to	
S +	used to	+ V
	ought to	
	should	

Passive:

can / may / must
have to

S + **should** + be + V₃
 used to
 ought to
 should

Ex: The manager should sign these contracts today.

 These contracts should be signed by the manager today.

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. t <u>e</u> nder | B. ga <u>r</u> nish | C. dra <u>i</u> n | D. spr <u>i</u> ngle |
| 2. A. g <u>e</u> nder | B. <u>e</u> nroll | C. p <u>r</u> eference | D. s <u>e</u> condary |
| 3. A. gr <u>i</u> ll | B. ga <u>r</u> nish | C. d <u>i</u> p | D. s <u>l</u> ice |
| 4. A. s <u>u</u> e | B. s <u>p</u> end | C. <u>s</u> ure | D. p <u>u</u> sue |
| 5. A. h <u>e</u> ad | B. s <u>p</u> read | C. cr <u>ea</u> m | D. br <u>e</u> ad |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------|------------|------------|
| 1. A. workforce | B. trouble | C. machine | D. female |
| 2. A. admire | B. freedom | C. fighter | D. image |
| 3. A. progress | B. career | C. busy | D. mistake |
| 4. A. accept | B. student | C. problem | D. open |
| 5. A. courage | B. office | C. inspire | D. person |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Complete the sentences with "will, shall, would, could, can, must, should, may, might"

- _____ **Will** _____ you talk to your parents before you decide to join the police forces, Mai?
- You _____ **mustn't** _____ pick those flowers. Don't you see the sign?
- Some people think married women _____ **shouldn't** _____ pursue a career.
- Remember to bring a raincoat with you. It _____ **might** _____ rain later.
- My brother is good at cooking and he _____ **can** _____ cook very delicious food.
- We _____ **must** _____ stop when the traffic lights are red.
- _____ **May** _____ school boys study needlework and cookery? - Yes, of course.

II. Choose the correct passive modals to complete the sentences.

- A child **mustn't be given/ should not be given** everything he or she wants.

2. He **might be presented/ may be presented** with an award for his hard work on gender equality.
3. The entire lake **can be seen/ should be seen** from their flat on the 7th floor.
4. Efforts **should be made/ can be made** to offer all children equal access to education.
5. Sunrise **might be observed/ can be observed** in the early morning hours.
6. I think everybody **should be provided/ must be provided** with equal access to health service.
7. My brother **may be asked/ will be asked** to join the police forces.
8. Our teacher told us that all of our assignments **must be written/ should be written** in ink.
9. The afternoon meeting **must be postponed/ might be postponed** because three of five committee members are unable to attend.
10. Children **should not be allowed/ can't be allowed** to play violent video games.
11. Milk **should be kept/ must be kept** in the fridge or it will go sour.
12. Important work **will be done/ can be done** first.

III. Fill in each blank with ONE suitable word in the box.

pursue	Working	issues	admired	courage
equal	inspire	workforce	decisions	irresponsibility

1. Having the same routine regularly without any rest may lead to health _____ **issues** _____ and other problems which also ruin the family life.
2. Working mothers can _____ **inspire** _____ their kids with their hard work and devotion.
3. Now I wish I could _____ **pursue** _____ a medical career to become a doctor.
4. A working mother has to manage both home and office at an _____ **equal** _____ level that is too much on a holiday basis.
5. Two thirds of the _____ **workforce** _____ in this textile factory is female.
6. All of the students have _____ **admired** _____ his excellent teaching.
7. _____ **Working** _____ mothers are not able to devote enough time to their kids, so the kids are not able to express their feeling with parents.
8. Educated women are becoming more independent and they may not wait for their husband's _____ **decisions** _____.
9. This female firefighter is famous for her _____ **courage** _____ and strong will.
10. Due to office work, working mothers may develop feelings of for _____ **irresponsibility** _____ for the family, affecting their children's health.

IV. Fill in each blank with ONE suitable preposition.

1. She worked as a nurse ____ **for** ____ the Red Cross and got to know many of the wounded pilots.
2. This year, more girls are expected to enroll _____ **in** _____ the first grade.
3. She became the first woman to fly _____ **across** _____ the Atlantic Ocean and the first person to fly over both the Atlantic and Pacific.
4. Many young people are not interested in sports. I have to force my sons _____ **to** ____ play tennis or go swimming.
5. She set many other records, wrote best-selling books, contributed to *The Ninety Nines*, gave advice to women _____ **on** _____ careers and helped inspire others.
6. The Vietnamese government has done a lot _____ **to** _____ eliminate hunger and poverty.
7. She mysteriously disappeared _____ **in** _____ a flight.
8. We do not allow any kind of discrimination _____ **against** _____ women and girls.
9. The members _____ **of** _____ our family have equal rights and responsibilities.
10. Most parents don't want to find _____ **out** _____ the gender of their babies before birth.

V. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

- | | |
|---|-------------|
| 1. Margaret Thatcher was the first woman to lead a
____ major ____ political party in the UK/ United Kingdom. | MAJORITY |
| 2. She was the first British female Prime Minister and was the
longest ____ serving ____ PM for over 150 years. | SERVE |
| 3. Her first term in office was not easy, but her government
successfully reduced the ____ unemployment ____ rate and
improved the economy. | EMPLOY |
| 4. Her ____ reputation ____ was gradually built up, which led to
her re-election in 1983 and a third term in office in 1987. | REPUTE |
| 5. Thatcher worked very hard to be a good wife and mother as well
as one of the most famous British ____ politicians ____, whose
nickname was the Iron Lady. | POLITIC |
| 6. All her life, she tirelessly ____ fought ____ for her beliefs. Not
everyone agreed with her methods. | FIGHT |
| 7. Everyone must be aware that housework is a shared
____ responsibility ____ among all family members, not just
women. | RESPONSIBLE |
| | PROVISION |

8. Through a joint project involving the World Bank, UNICEF hopes to help the government provide all children with textbooks at the beginning of each school year.

EQUALLY

9. In the workplace, women should be given equal opportunities as men.

COURAGE

10. Until now, the high cost of schooling has discouraged or prevented poor parents from having their children, especially girls, educated.

VI. Find and correct the mistakes.

1. The work should do by one of the students. → **should be done**

2. You will be tell the story later. → **told**

3. I'll be pay at the end of the month. → **paid**

4. This wine can be serve with seafood. → **served**

5. Music with strong rhythm and harmony could heard on his debut album. → **be heard**

6. The students must give enough time to finish their tests. → **be given**

VII. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. Since 2009, Iceland has been the global in gender equality.

A. leader

B. leads

C. leading

D. lead

2. A common reason that someone more for similar work is because of his or her experience or "length of service".

A. may be paid

B. should not be paid

C. can be paid

D. must be

paid

3. For the past five years, Iceland has been in the first rank of educational achievement and in women's economic conditions.

A. improve

B. improvement

C. improving

D. improved

4. True gender equality when both men and women reach a balance between work and family.

A. can achieve

B. should be achieved

C. can be achieved

D. should

achieve

5. On October 24, 1975, more than 25 thousand women in Iceland took a day off to emphasize the importance of women's to the economy, both in paid and unpaid work.

A. contribute

B. contributed

C. contributing

D.

contribution

6. Gender equality is also a part of the to the challenges facing society.

- A. solution B. solute C. solves D. solve
7. The ____ of women in the labour market in Iceland is one of the highest in the world.
A. participate B. participating C. participation D. participated
8. The least equal country in the world for women, ranking 145th, was Yemen, where only 55% of women can read and only 6% ____ college.
A. attend B. enroll C. go D. tend
9. UNICEF says that ____ to education is one of the biggest challenges facing children in Yemen today, especially girls.
A. access B. get C. connect D. search
10. Until now, the high cost of schooling has discouraged or prevented poor parents from having their children, ____ girls, educated.
A. especially B. specially C. and D. with
11. All forms of discrimination against all women and girls ____ immediately everywhere.
A. must be taken away B. must be ended C. must be allowed D. must be followed
12. Moreover, a lack of female teachers contributes to low ____ of girls in schools.
A. enrolment B. application C. participation D. gender
13. UNICEF is now ____ schools and families with educational supplies to help lower costs.
A. providing B. improving C. contributing D. making
14. Women with high qualifications ____ to managers.
A. must promote B. must be promoted C. must move D. must be moved
15. Through a joint project involving the World Bank, UNICEF ____ to help the government provide all children with textbooks at the beginning of each school year.
A. hopes B. want C. plans D. investigate

C. READING

I. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only one word in each space.

incomes service earnings bartenders occupation
workforce compared gender inequality reinforcement

Gender Equality in the United States of America

In the United States, the gender earnings ratio suggests that there has been an increase in women's earnings (1) ____ **compared** _____ to men. Men's plateau in earnings began after

the 1970s, allowing for the increase in women's wages to close the ratio between (2) _____ **incomes** _____. Despite the smaller ratio between men and women's wages, disparity still exists. Census data suggests that women's earnings are 71 percent of men's (3) _____ **earnings** _____ in 1999.

As women entered the (4) _____ **workforce** _____ in larger numbers since the 1960s, occupations have become segregated based on the level of femininity or masculinity associated with each (5) _____ **occupation** _____. Census data suggests that some occupations have become more gender integrated (mail carriers, (6) _____ **bartenders** _____, bus drivers, and real estate agents). In other areas, however, the reverse is true: occupations such as teachers, nurses, secretaries, and librarians have become female-dominated while occupations including architects, electrical engineers, and airplane pilots remain predominately male in composition. Women seem to occupy jobs in the (7) _____ **service** _____ sector at higher rates than men. Women's overrepresentation in these jobs as opposed to jobs that require managerial work acts as a (8) _____ **reinforcement** _____ of women and men into traditional (9) _____ **gender** _____ role that might influence persisting gender (10) _____ **inequality** _____.

II. Choose the best answers to the following questions.

Sonita Alizadeh was born and grew up in Afghanistan until she was eight when the family fled to Iran because of war. Sonita remembers her childhood of hunger, aerial bombardment and Taliban fighters. In Iran, she couldn't get a formal education because of not having proper identification. She had to clean bathrooms and learnt the basics of how to read and write herself.

Sonita watched music videos on TV to kill her free time and learnt the styles of Iranian rapper Yas and US rapper Eminem. She started to write songs about her life as a refugee, child worker and especially a female. Other songs are about her girl friends with broken spirits after arguing and begging their parents not to sell them. Her songs have empowered her friends to protest against forced marriages which account for 60-80 per cent of Afghan marriages.

Things were all right until they weren't. Sonita's mother asked her to come back to Afghanistan as she needed 7,000 dowry to prepare for Sonita's brother's wedding. Her mother thought she could sell Sonita for a man with 9,000 dowry. Devastated by her mother's wish, Sonita fought by making a music video "Daughters for Sale" with the help of an Iranian filmmaker. Thanks to the video, the Strongheart Group contacted her and gave her a scholarship in the US where she now can go to school and remain single.

1. What did Sonita do to earn money in Iran?

- A. She wrote songs and rapped. B. She cleaned bathrooms. C. She made music videos.

2. What is TRUE about Sonita's songs?

A. They were banned in Iran.

B. They have given girls strength to protest against arranged marriages.

C. They're about her love of her homeland Afghanistan.

3. How did Sonita feel when her mother wanted to sell her?

A. Extremely upset and shocked

B. Calm and indifferent

C. Angry and

hateful

4. Where does Sonita live now?

A. Afghanistan

B. Iran

C. The USA

D. WRITING

I. Rewrite the sentence using modal verbs in passive.

1. Ann can't use her office at the moment.

Her office can't be used by Ann at the moment.

2. I have to finish my work now.

My work has to be finished now.

3. You must do your task.

Your task must be done.

4. Governments should offer poor women more help.

Poor women should be offered more help by governments.

5. We must do something before it's too late.

Something must be done before it's too late.

6. My uncle may earn 500\$ a day.

500\$ a day may be earned by my uncle.

7. He might have caught the fish.

The fish might have been caught by him.

8. They will sue the company for wage discrimination.

The company will be sued for wage discrimination.

9. She could have washed the dress.

The dress could have been washed by her.

10. She can't pick many flowers.

Many flowers can't be picked by her.

II. Rewrite the sentence using modal verbs in passive.

1. Parents should give children a lot of love.

Children should be given a lot of love by parents.

2. Each student must write an essay on gender equality.

An essay on gender equality must be written by each student.

3. You must wash your hands.

Your hands must be washed.

4. He can speak four languages.

Four languages can be spoken by him.

5. You must keep dogs outside shops.

Dogs must be kept outside shops.

6. The Vietnamese government will make more progress in gender equality.

More progress will be made by the Vietnamese government in gender equality.

7. Children should treat old men with respect.

Old men should be treated with respect by children.

8. They should give men and women equal pay for equal work.

Men and women should be given equal pay for equal work.

9. My classmates used to call me John.

I used to be called John by my classmates.

10. He can't repair my bike.

My bike can't be repaired by him.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. aw <u>are</u> | B. f <u>a</u> my | C. pl <u>a</u> net | D. m <u>a</u> rried |
| 2. A. s <u>a</u> uce | B. s <u>t</u> eam | C. s <u>u</u> gar | D. s <u>t</u> ew |
| 3. A. mar <u>i</u> nate | B. gr <u>a</u> te | C. sh <u>a</u> llot | D. st <u>a</u> ple |
| 4. A. main <u>tai</u> n | B. str <u>i</u> ng | C. pres <u>e</u> nt | D. oft <u>e</u> n |
| 5. A. en <u>r</u> oll | B. happ <u>e</u> n | C. pursu <u>e</u> | D. aff <u>e</u> ct |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. advice | B. amazed | C. reply | D. g <u>e</u> nder |
| 2. A. major | B. female | C. p <u>o</u> lice | D. famous |
| 3. A. support | B. w <u>o</u> men | C. pursue | D. employ |
| 4. A. conflict | B. m <u>a</u> rried | C. aware | D. alone |

5. A. correct B. follow C. party D. workforce

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. UNICEF is working both nationally and regionally to educate the public on the ____ of educating girls.

- A. importance B. development C. enrollment D. hesitation

2. Reducing gender ____ improves productivity and economic growth of a nation.

- A. equality B. inequality C. possibility D. rights

3. The gender ____ in education in Yemen is among the highest in the world.

- A. gap B. generation C. sex D. male

4. Gender equality ____ only when women and men enjoy the same opportunities.

- A. will achieve B. achieves C. achieve D. will be achieved

5. International Women's Day is an occasion to make more ____ towards achieving gender equality.

- A. movement B. progress C. improvement D. development

6. In Muslim countries, changes ____ to give women equal rights to natural or economic resources, as well as access to ownership.

- A. may make B. will make C. must be made D. can make

7. Women are more likely to be victims of ____ violence.

- A. domestic B. household C. home D. family

8. In order to reduce gender inequality in South Korean society, women ____ more opportunities by companies.

- A. will prove B. should provide C. may be provided D. should be provided

9. In Yemen, women have less ____ to property ownership, credit, training and employment

- A. possibility B. way C. use D. access

10. Child marriage ____ in several parts in the world because it limits access to education and training.

- A. must stop B. will be stopped C. must be stopped D. can be stop

11. The principle of equal pay is that men and women doing ____ work should get paid the same amount.

A. same

B. alike

C. similar

D. identical

12. In Egypt, female students from disadvantaged families ____ scholarships to continue their studies.

A. will be given

B. can be given

C. may be given

D. must be given

13. In Korea, many people still feel that women should be in charge of ____ after getting married.

A. housekeeping

B. homemaker

C. house husband

D.

householder

14. Discrimination on the basis of gender ____ from workplaces.

A. should be removed

B. must be removed

C. can be removed

D. will

be removed

IV. Choose the best word to complete the sentences below.

access

eliminated

discrimination

progress

preference

caretaker

rights

gender equality

1. Much has to be done to achieve _____ **gender equality** _____ in employment opportunities.

2. Employers give _____ **preference** _____ to university graduates.

3. People have _____ **eliminated** _____ poverty and hunger in many parts of the world.

4. Both genders should be provided with equal _____ **rights** _____ to education, employment and healthcare.

5. Internet _____ **access** _____ is available everywhere in this city.

6. A person looking after someone who is sick, disabled or old at home is a _____ **caretaker** _____.

7. We should not allow any kind of _____ **discrimination** _____ against women and girls.

8. People in this country have made good _____ **progress** _____ in eliminating domestic violence.

V. Find and correct the mistake.

1. I think fast food **should be sold** in schools. → **should not be sold**

2. Domestic violence against women and girls will **eliminated** when governments and people co-operate.

→ **be eliminated**

3. The text books **can't be buy** today because they have sold out. → **can't be bought**
4. Do you think that overeating can cause people **being** overweight? → **to be**
5. Your car **must serviced** regularly if you want it to be in good condition. → **must be serviced**
6. You look so tired. Go to the doctor's and you **will give** some days off. → **will be given**

VI. Complete the sentences with the correct word in the box.

force	gender	enrol
eliminate	equal	discrimination

1. Our family members have _____ **equal** _____ rights and responsibilities.
2. Many young people are not interested in sports. I have to _____ **force** _____ my sons to play tennis or go swimming.
3. We do not allow any kind of _____ **discrimination** _____ against women and girls.
4. Most parents don't want to find out the _____ **gender** _____ of their babies before birth.
5. The Vietnamese government has done a lot to _____ **eliminate** _____ hunger and poverty.
6. This year, more girls are expected to _____ **enrol** _____ in the first grade.

VII. Choose the word in the box to complete the text.

right	unpaid	inequalities	vital	discrimination
exploitation	parity	legislation	remarkable	multiplier

Ending all forms of (1) _____ **discrimination** _____ against women and girls is not only a basic human (2) _____ **right** _____, but it also crucial to accelerating sustainable development. It has been proven time and again, that empowering women and girls has a (3) _____ **multiplier** _____ effect, and helps drive up economic growth and development across the board.

Since 2000, UNDP, together with our UN partners and the rest of the global community, has made gender equality central to our work. We have seen (4) _____ **remarkable** _____ progress since then. More girls are now in school compared to 15 years ago, and most regions have reached gender (5) _____ **parity** _____ in primary education. Women now make up to 41 percent of paid workers outside of agriculture, compared to 35 percent in 1990.

The SDGs aim to build on these achievements to ensure that there is an end to discrimination against women and girls everywhere. There are still huge (6) _____ **inequalities** _____ in the labour market in some regions, with women systematically denied equal access to jobs. Sexual violence and (7) _____ **exploitation** _____, the unequal division of (8)

_____ **unpaid** _____ care and domestic work, and discrimination in public office, all remain huge barriers.

Affording women equal rights to economic resources such as land and property are (9) _____ **vital** _____ targets to realizing this goal. So is ensuring universal access to sexual and reproductive health. Today there are more women in public office than ever before, but encouraging women leaders will help strengthen policies and (10) _____ **legislation** _____ for greater gender equality.

VIII. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

GENDER ROLES IN PARENTING AND MARRIAGE

Gender roles develop (1) _____ internalisation and identification during childhood. Sigmund Freud suggested that biology determines gender identity through (2) _____ with either the mother or the father. While some people agree with Freud, others (3) _____ that the development of the “gendered self” is not completely determined by biology, but rather the interactions that one has with the primary caregiver(s).

From birth, parents (4) _____ differently with children depending on their sex, and through this interaction parents can instill different values or traits in their children on the basis of what is (5) _____ for their sex. This internalisation of gender norms includes the choice of toys (“feminine” toys often reinforce interaction, nurturing, and closeness, “masculine” toys often reinforce independence and competitiveness) that a parents give to their children. Education also plays an (6) _____ role in the creation of gender norms.

Gender roles that are created in childhood may permeate throughout life and help to structure (7) _____ and marriage, especially in relation to work in and outside home. Despite the increasing number of women in the labor (8) _____, women are still responsible for the majority of domestic chores and childcare. While women split their time between work and care of the home, men in many societies are pressured into being the primary economic supporter of the home. (9) _____ the fact that different households may divide chores more evenly, there is evidence supporting the fact that women have retained the primary caregiver role within familial life despite contributing economically to the household. This evidence suggest that women (10) _____ work outside the home often put an extra 18 hours a week doing household or childcare related chores as opposed to men who average 12 minutes a day in childcare activities.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|------------|
| 1. A. with | B. through | C. upon | D. across |
| 2. A. health | B. fitness | C. identification | D. balance |
| 3. A. argue | B. claim | C. discuss | D. debate |
| 4. A. acquaint | B. relate | C. interact | D. make |

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------|--------------|--------------|
| 5. A. confusing | B. passive | C. native | D. normative |
| 6. A. integral | B. exact | C. fact | D. true |
| 7. A. offspring | B. family | C. parenting | D. parents |
| 8. A. force | B. power | C. strength | D. health |
| 9. A. without | B. in | C. Despite | D. on |
| 10. A. which | B. who | C. whose | D. that |

IX. Read the passage carefully and choose the correct answer.

Today, more and more women are actively participating in social activities both in urban and rural areas. Specifically, they have shined brightly in even many fields commonly regarded as the man's areas such as business, scientific research and social management. In some areas, women even show more overwhelming power than men. The image of contemporary Vietnamese women with creativeness, dynamism, success has become popular in Vietnam's society. The fact reveals that the gender gap has been remarkably narrowed and women enjoy many more opportunities to pursue their social careers and obtain success, contributing to national socio-economic development. According to Ms, Le Thi Quy, Director of the Gender/and Development Research Centre under the University of Social Sciences and Humanities, Hanoi National University, gender equity in Vietnam has reached a high level over the past decade. The rate of Vietnamese women becoming National Assembly members from the 9th term to the 11th term increased 8.7%, bringing the proportion of Vietnamese women in authority to 27.3%, the highest rate in Southeast Asia. There is no big gap in the level of literacy and schooling between men and women. Women account for about 37% of university and college graduates, 19.9% of doctoral degree holders and 6.7% of professors and associate professors.

The legitimate rights of women and children are ensured more than ever before with more complete legal documents including laws, conventions and national action plans, among which the laws on "gender equity" mark a turning-point in the empowerment of women.

Mass media also highlights the continued success of women in every field and honors their great importance in modern society, helping to do away with outdated perceptions about traditional women's duties. Many projects on reproductive health care, children protection, and family income improvement jointly conducted by various mass organizations, state agencies and non-governmental organizations have created favorable conditions for women to become involved.

1. The text is about ____.

- A. the changes in the status of Vietnamese women
- B. the Vietnamese women's liberation

- C. the Vietnamese sex discrimination
D. the discrimination that Vietnamese women have to face
2. Which adjective is not used to describe Vietnamese women?
A. successful B. creative **C. narrow** D. dynamic
3. According to the data in the text, _____.
A. Vietnamese women do not take part in authority
B. the level of literacy and schooling between men and women in Vietnam is the same
C. there are more women in authority in Vietnam than those in any other countries in Southeast Asia
D. there are no female professors in Vietnam
4. Vietnamese women _____.
A. have few opportunities to develop their intellectual ability
B. have only shined brightly in doing housework
C. cannot do any scientific research
D. are ensured their rights with laws, conventions and national action plans
5. Which is not mentioned in the text as a project to create condition for Vietnamese women?
A. Traditional women's duties B. Reproductive health care
C. Children protection D. Family income improvement

Unit 7. CULTURAL DIVERSITY

PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

alert	(adj):	tỉnh táo, lanh lợi
altar	(n):	bàn thờ
ancestor	(n):	ông bà, tổ tiên
Aquarius	(n):	chòm sao/ cung Thủy Bình
Aries	(n):	chòm sao/ cung Bạch Dương
assignment	(n):	bài tập lớn
best man	(n):	phù rể
bride	(n):	cô dâu
bridegroom	(n):	chú rể

bridesmaid	(n):	phù dâu
Cancer	(n):	chòm sao/ cung Cự Giải
Capricorn	(n):	chòm sao/ cung Ma Kết
complicated	(adj):	phức tạp
contrast	(n):	sự tương phản, sự trái ngược
+ contrast	(v):	tương phản, khác nhau
crowded	(adj):	đông đúc
decent	(adj):	đàng hoàng, tử tế
diversity	(n):	sự đa dạng, phong phú
engaged	(adj):	đính hôn, đính ước
+ engagement	(n):	sự đính hôn, sự đính ước
export	(n):	sự xuất khẩu, hàng xuất khẩu
+ export	(v):	xuất khẩu
favourable	(adj):	thuận lợi
fortune	(n):	vận may, sự giàu có
funeral	(n):	đám tang
garter	(n):	nịt bít bắt
Gemini	(n):	chòm sao/ cung Song Tử
handkerchief	(n):	khăn tay
high status	(np):	có địa vị cao, có vị trí cao
honeymoon	(n):	tuần trăng mật
horoscope	(n):	số tử vi, cung Hoàng đạo
import	(n):	sự nhập khẩu, hàng nhập khẩu
+ import	(v):	nhập khẩu
influence	(n):	sự ảnh hưởng
legend	(n):	truyền thuyết, truyện cổ tích
lentil	(n):	đậu lăng, hạt đậu lăng
Leo	(n):	chòm sao/ cung Sư Tử
Libra	(n):	chòm sao/ cung Thiên Bình
life partner	(np):	bạn đời
magpie	(n):	chim chích chòe
majority	(n):	phần lớn

mystery	(n):	điều huyền bí, bí ẩn
object	(v):	phản đối, chống lại
+ object	(n):	đồ vật, vật thể
Pisces	(n):	chòm sao/ cung Song Ngư
present	(adj):	có mặt, hiện tại
present	(n):	món quà
present	(v):	đưa ra, trình bày
prestigious	(adj):	có uy tín, có thanh thế
proposal	(n):	sự cầu hôn
protest	(n,v):	sự phản kháng, sự phản đối
rebel	(v,n):	nổi loạn, chống đối
ritual	(n):	lễ nghi, nghi thức
Sagittarius	(n):	chòm sao/ cung Nhân Mã
Scorpio	(n):	chòm sao/ cung Thiên Yết
soul	(n):	linh hồn, tâm hồn
superstition	(n):	sự tin ngưỡng, mê tín
+ superstitious	(adj):	mê tín
sweep	(v):	quét
take place	(v):	diễn ra, xảy ra
Taurus	(n):	chòm sao/ cung Kim Ngưu
veil	(n):	màng che mặt
venture	(n):	dự án hoặc công việc kinh doanh
Virgo	(n):	chòm sao/ cung Xử Nữ
wealth	(n):	sự giàu có, giàu sang, của cải
wedding ceremony	(np):	lễ cưới
wedding reception	(np):	tiệc cưới

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. INDEFINITE ARTICLES: A/AN

- An đứng trước 1 danh từ đếm được số ít bắt đầu bằng 1 nguyên âm (u, e, o, a, i).
- A đứng trước danh từ đếm được số ít bắt đầu là 1 phụ âm.

1. A/ An được dùng trước:

- Danh từ đếm được, số ít.	Ex: a doctor, a bag, an animal, an hour.....
----------------------------	--

*An: đứng trước nguyên âm hoặc “h” câm.	Ex: an animal, an hour.....
- Trong các cấu trúc: so + adj + a/an + noun such + a/an + noun as + adj + a/an + noun + as How + adj + a/an + noun + verb!	Ex: She is so pretty a girl. - It's such a beautiful picture. - She is as pretty a girl as her sister. - How beautiful a girl you are!
- Chỉ một người được đề cập qua tên.	Ex: A Mrs. Blue sent you this letter.
- Trước các danh từ trong ngữ đồng vị.	Ex: Nguyen Du, a great poet, wrote that novel.
- Trong các cụm từ chỉ số lượng.	Ex: a pair, a couple, a lot of, a little, a few, a large/great number of.....

2. A/ An không được dùng:

- ONE được sử dụng thay A/An để nhấn mạnh.	Ex: There is a book on the table, but one is not enough.
- Trước danh từ không đếm được.	Ex: Coffee is also a kind of drink.
- Trước các danh từ đếm được số nhiều.	Ex: Dogs are faithful animals.

II. DEFINITE ARTICLE: THE

1. THE được dùng trước:

- Những vật duy nhất.	Ex: the sun, the moon, the world....
- Các danh từ được xác nhận bởi cụm tính từ hoặc mệnh đề tính từ.	- The house with green fence is hers. - The man that we met has just come.
- Các danh từ được xác định qua ngữ cảnh hoặc được đề cập trước đó.	Ex: Finally, the writer killed himself. - I have a book and an eraser. The book is now on the table.
- Các danh từ chỉ sự giải trí.	Ex: the theater, the concert, the church
- Trước tên các tàu thuyền, máy bay.	Ex: The Titanic was a great ship.
- Các sông, biển, đại dương, dãy núi.	Ex: the Mekong River, the East Sea, the Pacific Ocean, the Himalayas
- Một nhóm các đảo hoặc quốc gia.	Ex: the Philippines, the United States.
- Tính từ dùng như danh từ tập hợp.	Ex: You should help the poor.
- Trong so sánh nhất.	Ex: Nam is the cleverest in his class.
- Tên người ở số nhiều (chỉ gia đình)	Ex: The Blacks, The Blues, the Nams

- Các danh từ đại diện cho 1 loài.	Ex: The cat is a lovely home pet.
- Các trạng từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn.	Ex: in the morning, in the street, in the water.....
- Số thứ tự.	Ex: the first, the second, the third....
- Chuỗi thời gian hoặc không gian.	Ex: the next, the following, the last...

2. THE không dùng được:

- Trước các danh từ số nhiều nói chung.	Ex: They build houses near the hall.
- Danh từ trừu tượng, không đếm được.	Ex: Independence is a happy thing.
- Các danh từ chỉ màu sắc.	Ex: Red and white make pink.
- Các môn học.	Ex: Math is her worst subject.
- Các vật liệu, kim loại.	Ex: Steel is made from iron.
- Các tên nước, châu lục, thành phố.	Ex: Ha Noi is the capital of Vietnam .
- Các chức danh, tên người.	Ex: President Bill Clinton, Ba, Nga .
- Các bữa ăn, món ăn, thức ăn.	Ex: We have rice and fish for dinner .
- Các trò chơi, thể thao.	Ex: Football is a popular sport in Vietnam.
- Các loại bệnh tật.	Ex: Cold is a common disease.
- Ngôn ngữ, tiếng nói.	Ex: English is being used everywhere.
- Các kỳ nghỉ, lễ hội.	Ex: Tet, Christmas, Valentine...
- Các mũi đất (nhô ra biển, hồ, núi)	Ex: Cape Horn, Lake Than Tho, Mount Cam, Mount Rushmore..... *But: the Cape of Good Hope, the Great Lake, the Mount of Olive.....

III. SO SÁNH

1. So sánh hơn

a. Short Adj/ Adv: là những từ có 1 âm tiết và những từ có 2 âm tiết kết thúc tận cùng là “y”:
early, healthy, happy, pretty, dry,

Form:

S + be/V + adj/ adv - er + than + O

Ex: She is **fatter than** her mother.

b. Long Adj/ Adv: là những từ có 2 âm tiết trở lên.

Form:

S + be/V + more + adj/ adv + than + O

Ex: He is *more generous than* his brother.

Note: Trước so sánh hơn có thể có “much”, “far”, “so”, “a little”, “a lot”, “a bit”

Ex: That car is *far more expensive than* that motorbike.

2. So sánh kém

Form:

S + be/V + less + adj/ adv/ noun + than + noun/pronoun

Ex: Their jobs allow them less freedom than ours do.

3. So sánh nhất

a. Short Adj/ Adv:

Form:

S + be/V + the adj/ adv - est +

Ex: Vinh is *the tallest* in our class.

b. Long Adj/ Adv:

Form:

S + be/V + the most adj/ adv +

Ex: Diep is *the most attractive girl* in their team.

Note: Một số Adj, Adv so sánh đặc biệt

Adj/ Adv	So sánh hơn	So sánh nhất
good/ well	better	the best: tốt, giỏi
bad/ badly	worse	the worst: tồi tệ, kém
much/ many	more	the most: nhiều
little	less	the least: ít
old	older	the oldest: cũ già
	elder	the eldest: anh, chị
far	farther	the farthest: khoảng cách
	further	the furthest: hơn, thêm
late	later	the latest: mới nhất
		the last: cuối (thứ tự)

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. pleasant

B. health

C. healthy

D. breathe

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 2. A. <u>come</u> | B. <u>roll</u> | C. <u>comb</u> | D. <u>grow</u> |
| 3. A. <u>fear</u> | B. <u>realize</u> | C. <u>pear</u> | D. <u>near</u> |
| 4. A. <u>inventor</u> | B. <u>president</u> | C. <u>adventure</u> | D. <u>genetics</u> |
| 5. A. <u>adopt</u> | B. <u>front</u> | C. <u>column</u> | D. <u>borrow</u> |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. recommend | B. volunteer | C. understand | D. <u>potential</u> |
| 2. A. <u>study</u> | B. reply | C. apply | D. rely |
| 3. A. suspicion | B. <u>telephone</u> | C. relation | D. direction |
| 4. A. reduction | B. <u>popular</u> | C. financial | D. romantic |
| 5. A. discover | B. <u>difficult</u> | C. invention | D. important |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Complete the sentences with A, An or The.

1. The Vietnamese like to joke around, but their jokes are not easily translated into English.
2. Each person has a strong sense of regional cultural identity.
3. Henry was a bit of a rebel when he was a teenager and dyed his hair pink, and he also rebelled his parents' plans for him and left school at the age of 16.
4. You may have an object that you trust will bring you good luck, but many people object to that belief.
5. Relationships in the family are never to be broken and they are to be built up continuously.
6. They are also very friendly, easy-going and have an easy smile.
7. To show respect, many Vietnamese people bow their heads to a superior or elder.
8. The Vietnamese have been described as energetic, sentimental, proud, and hardworking
9. The course allows students to progress at their own speed, and they are making much progress in awareness of cultural diversity.
10. There is an obvious contrast between the cultures of East and West; however, European cultures contrast with that of the USA.

II. Put the correct preposition for the sentences below.

1. Most Vietnamese people place more emphasis on their duties in their family than their own desires.

2. ____ **At** ____ home, he should show respect ____ **to** ____ his parents, older brothers or sisters, and older relatives.
3. ____ **For** ____ some teenagers, when they rebel ____ **against** ____ their parents, they act as rebels.
4. If you really want ____ **to** ____ get to know ____ **about** ____ their culture, you need ____ **to** ____ go there to record their daily activities as well as festivals.
5. There are three ways ____ **by** ____ which a man can acquire a good name: either ____ **by** ____ heroic deeds, ____ **by** ____ intellectual achievements, or ____ **by** ____ moral virtue.
6. If you volunteer ____ **to** ____ present about that cultural aspect, you will get a present ____ **from** ____ the teacher.
7. Rich people who are not educated are often looked ____ **down** ____ upon ____ **by** ____ other people.
8. He seems ____ **to** ____ have particular respect and admiration ____ **for** ____ learned people, and learning is considered more valuable than wealth and material success.
9. There is an increase ____ **in** ____ the number ____ **of** ____ Vietnamese women taking the roles ____ **of** ____ leaders ____ **in** ____ their organisations.
10. You need ____ **to** ____ perfect yourself ____ **in** ____ order to look ____ **for** ____ a perfect life partner.

III. Choose the correct words in brackets to complete the sentences.

1. In the past, the proposal and engagement ceremonies took place one or two years **before** / **after** the wedding.
2. There is a wedding **proposal** / **reception** for all guests after the wedding ceremony.
3. My cousin's **marriage** / **wedding** is next Sunday.
4. The **groom** / **bride** can have as many bridesmaids as she wants.
5. There will be about 100 **grooms** / **guests** at my cousin's wedding.
6. My brother got **engaged** / **married** to one of his friends from college and started saving for the big day.
7. On the wedding day, the best man is expected to help the **groom** / **bride**.

IV. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

1. The parents of the groom go to the fortune teller to see what date and time is best for them to ____ celebrate ____ the wedding ceremony.	CELEBRATION
2. ____ Traditionally ____, the reception occurs at their houses, but now many families hold wedding parties at the restaurant.	TRADITION

3. American teenagers send an average of 60 text messages per day, making this an <u>effective</u> way in communication.	EFFEC
4. Consider that there are a good number of book <u>publishers</u> now putting their content online.	PUBLIS
5. In order to integrate technology into the classroom, teachers should implement the BYOD (Bring Your Own Device) policy to make the <u>learning</u> process more relevant and effective.	LEAR
6. Studies encourage mobile learning because students benefit greatly from more opportunities for <u>academic</u> development.	ACADEM
7. On that day, the groom's family and relatives visit the bride and her family with round lacquered boxes known as betrothal presents which are covered with red cloth and carried by <u>unmarried</u> girls or boys.	MARF
8. The Intel programme tries to deliver the “four Cs” to grade-10 students: critical thinking, communication, collaboration, and <u>creativity</u> .	CREAT
9. Many digital textbooks are <u>constantly</u> updated and often more vivid, helpful, creative, and a lot of cheaper than those old heavy books.	CONSTAN
10. Then, the couple should pray in front of the altar to ask their ancestors for <u>permission</u> for their marriage, then express their gratitude to both groom's and bride's parents for raising and protecting them.	PERM

V. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. To the Chinese, 8 is a lucky number, ____ the Vietnamese believe 9 brings luck, and the 1 and 8 of 18, adding up to 9, are considered success.

- A. despite B. but **C. while** D. and

2. Many people believe that the first person who visits their home on the first day of the New Year will ____ their life.

- A. change B. afford C. effect **D. affect**

3. That year, things were going a lot better for the Pilgrims, thanks to ____ help of Squanto and Samoset.

- A. an **B. the** C. a D. x

4. In ____ Netherlands, singing at ____ dinner table means you are singing to ____ devil for your dinner – which means bad luck.

- A. x - the - the B. the - the - a C. x - a - the **D. the - the - the**

5. In Spain, it is believed to be bad luck to enter ____ room with your left foot.
 A. a B. an C. the D. x
6. Cultural diversity makes the United States a ____ interesting place in which to live for all of its inhabitants.
 A. much better B. more C. many more D. much more
7. In every culture, there are basic standards for social ____ such as personal space distance, eye contact, amount of body language displayed in public.
 A. reaction B. interaction C. relationship D. relation
8. They invited these friends and their families to ____ special meal. It was ____ first Thanksgiving dinner with turkey, fish, green beans, and soup.
 A. a - a B. a - the C. a - x D. the - a
9. Today, Australia is one of ____ diverse countries in the world.
 A. the more culturally B. the most culturally C. most cultural D. the most cultural
10. UN World Day for Cultural Diversity for Dialogue and Development on May 21st is a chance to celebrate the cultural diversity of people around us, and find out more about what we have ____.
 A. as usual B. as normal C. in common D. alike

C. READING

I. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only one word in each space.

range	cultures	first	added	contributed
benefited	dishes	developed	way	alive

Cultural diversity means a (1) **range** of different societies or people of different origins, religions and traditions all living and interacting together. Britain has (2) **benefited** from diversity throughout its long history and is currently one of the most culturally diverse countries in the world.

The food they eat, the music they listen to, and the clothes they wear have all been influenced by different (3) **cultures** coming into Britain. Ethnic food, for example, is part of an average British diet. One of Britain's favourite (4) **dishes** is Indian curry. Britons have enjoyed curry for a surprisingly long time - the (5) **first** curry went on an English menu in 1773.

Even the English language (6) developed from the languages spoken by Anglo-Saxons, Scandinavian Vikings and Norman French invaders. New words were (7) added from the languages of other immigrants over the years.

Valuing the diverse culture is all about understanding and respecting the beliefs of others and their (8) way of life, as we would expect someone to respect ours. It is about supporting individuals in keeping their cultural traditions (9) alive and appreciating the fact that all these different traditions will enrich British life both today and in the future.

People from all over the world have (10) contributed to the Britain and they continue to do so.

II. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

VIETNAMESE WEDDING CUSTOMS

The wedding consists of several (1) _____ including asking permission to receive the bride, the procession to the groom's house, the ancestor ceremony, and the banquet party.

In the morning, the groom's mother and a few close relatives would walk to the bride's house with a present of betel to ask permission to receive the (2) _____ at her house. The date and time of the ceremony is usually determined by a Buddhist monk or fortune teller.

In the procession to receive the bride, the groom and his family often carry decorated lacquer boxes covered in red cloth to represent his (3) _____ and which include various (4) _____ for the bride's family. There are either 6 or 8 boxes, but never 7 because it is bad (5) _____.

After paying their (6) _____ to their ancestors, the bride and groom will serve tea to their parents who will then give them advice regarding (7) _____ and family. During the candle ceremony, the bride and groom's families union is celebrated and the mother-in-law of the bride will open the boxes filled with jewelry and dress her new daughter-in-law in the jewelry.

Finally, the groom officially asks for permission to take his new bride (8) _____ and they make their way back to his house. During the (9) _____, there is usually a 10-course meal and the bride and groom make their (10) _____ to each table to express their gratitude and also get money as presents.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. A. asks | B. ceremonies | C. requests | D. tells |
| 2. A. bride | B. regulations | C. laws | D. notes |
| 3. A. condition | B. culture | C. relation | D. wealth |
| 4. A. beans | B. boxes | C. presents | D. wars |
| 5. A. bad | B. fond | C. luck | D. interest |
| 6. A. respects | B. allows | C. stops | D. refuses |

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------|
| 7. A. existence | B. dead | C. marriage | D. divorce |
| 8. A. flat | B. home | C. house | D. apartment |
| 9. A. acquaintance | B. contribution | C. difficulty | D. reception |
| 10. A. troubles | B. problems | C. ovals | D. rounds |

D. WRITING

I. Complete the sentences with a suitable comparative or superlative.

- In my opinion, Spanish is (easy) **the easiest** foreign language to learn.
- Dogs are intelligent but not (intelligent) **as intelligent as** chimpanzees.
- They say it's (good) **better** to have loved and lost than never to have loved at all.
- Even (carefully) **the most carefully** prepared plans can go wrong.
- England isn't (mountainous country) **as mountainous country as** Scotland.
- Reykjavik is the world's (northern) **northernest** capital city.
- Your composition is full of mistakes because you didn't spend half (time) **more time** on it **than** you should have!
- Don't worry, you'll be OK with Gary, he's (careful driver) **the most careful driver** you could wish to have.
- In the Alto Adige region of Italy, German dialect is spoken much (frequently) **more frequently than** Italian.
- Sumo wrestlers must be (heavy) **the heaviest** athletes in the world.

II. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the superlative form of the adjectives given.

- Russia is bigger than any other country in the world. (big)
Russia is the biggest country in the world.
- Many people believe that no sea in the world is warmer than the Red Sea. (warm)
Many people believe that the Red Sea is the warmest in the world.
- The Nile is longer than any other river in the world. (long)
The Nile is the longest river in the world.
- No ocean in the world is deeper than the Pacific. (deep)
The Pacific is the deepest ocean in the world.
- Mount Everest is higher than every mountain in the world. (high)
Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1. A. inventor | B. lecture | C. <u>examine</u> | D. second |
| 2. A. doctor | B. <u>provide</u> | C. adopt | D. sponsor |
| 3. A. <u>biology</u> | B. invention | C. discovery | D. digestion |
| 4. A. discovered | B. studied | C. <u>invented</u> | D. entered |
| 5. A. carry | B. <u>rabies</u> | C. cat | D. battle |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. swallow | B. <u>survive</u> | C. digest | D. finish |
| 2. A. product | B. satisfy | C. pleasure | D. <u>however</u> |
| 3. A. <u>happiness</u> | B. rewrite | C. eject | D. oblige |
| 4. A. compare | B. compose | C. <u>company</u> | D. consist |
| 5. A. manage | B. recognize | C. argue | D. <u>discriminate</u> |

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. There are some things Americans would change, and ____ thing people would change is their education.

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------|--------|-------------|
| A. the biggest | B. a big | C. the | D. a bigger |
|----------------|----------|--------|-------------|

2. ____ people from England who went to live in North America nearly 400 years ago were called Pilgrims.

- | | | | |
|------|-------------|-------|--------|
| A. a | B. <u>x</u> | C. an | D. the |
|------|-------------|-------|--------|

3. In our tradition, when people mention "matter of betel and areca" they are talking about ____ issue.

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------|----------|--------------------|
| A. unmarried | B. married | C. marry | D. <u>marriage</u> |
|--------------|------------|----------|--------------------|

4. Cultural diversity makes our country ____ by making it a ____ place in which to live.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| A. rich - more interesting | B. richest - most interesting |
| C. richer - most interesting | D. <u>richer - more interesting</u> |

5. These people wanted to start ____ new life in ____ new country, but they faced a lot of difficulties because they didn't know anything about the new land.

- | | | | |
|----------|-----------------|------------|------------|
| A. a – a | B. <u>a – a</u> | C. a – the | D. the – a |
|----------|-----------------|------------|------------|

6. Nations where there is much cultural diversity can also sometimes be known as a ____.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| A. multi-ethnic society | B. multidimensional problem |
| C. <u>multicultural society</u> | D. cultural uniformity |

7. In Portugal, walking backwards will bring bad luck, because it paves ____ way for ____ devil to enter.

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------|----------|------------|
| A. the - the | B. a - the | C. a - a | D. the - a |
|--------------|------------|----------|------------|

8. The Pilgrims didn't know how to grow ____ food or build ____ homes, so a lot of them became very ill.

A. a - a

B. X - X

C. a - the

D. the - a

9. To many ____ street vendors, the success of their day is determined by how it starts and by their first customer.

A. superstitiously

B. supernatural

C. superstition

D. superstitious

10. In Russia, there is ____ belief that unmarried people should avoid sitting at ____ corner of ____ table because they will find difficulties finding their life partner and will not get married.

A. a - the - the

B. the - the - the

C. a - a - a

D. a - a - the

11. On one spring day, ____ Pilgrims met two native Americans, Squanto and Samoset, who could speak English.

A. an

B. the

C. a

D. x

12. One Chinese legend has it that the Jade Emperor asked for twelve representatives of the animal species on Earth to be brought to his ____ kingdom.

A. heavenly

B. sky

C. heaven

D. space

13. Before the wedding, the groom usually asks his best friend to be his ____, and the bride may have one or more ____.

A. best man - bridesmaids

B. best man - housemaids

C. closest man best maids

D. good man - best maids

14. Squanto and Samoset became ____ friends with the Pilgrims and gave them a lot of ____ advice about how to grow food and build homes to make their lives easier.

A. a - a

B. X - X

C. a - the

D. the - a

15. However, another version says the ____ of the 12 animals in the Chinese horoscope was decided thousands of years ago by Buddha, who called for a New Year's meeting of animals.

A. site

B. pan

C. order

D. position

16. They had ____ food and ____ warm homes for the winter, so they wanted to say thank you to their native American friends.

A. a - a

B. x - x

C. a - the

D. the - a

17. People from ____ cultures bring language skills, new ways of thinking, and creative solutions to difficult problems.

A. diversify

B. diversification

C. diverse

D. diversity

18. No one knows the real origins of the Chinese ____ representing the cycles of the lunar year.

A. horoscope

B. cycle

C. stars

D. space

IV. Fill in the gap with "a" or "the" to complete the passage.

(1) A wedding is the ceremony where (2) a couple gets married. On their wedding day, (3) the bride and groom may exchange wedding gifts or rings. Before the wedding, the groom usually asks his brother, best friend or father to be his best man. (4) the best man helps the groom get ready for (5) the ceremony and makes sure nothing goes wrong at the wedding. The bride may have one or more bridesmaids. The bridesmaid keeps (6) the bride calm, helps her get ready and looks after her dress. After the wedding ceremony, there is usually (7) a reception for the guests. Traditionally, the bride and groom go on their honeymoon immediately after (8) the wedding reception. Nowadays, (9) the majority of couples wait for a few days before they leave on honeymoon.

V. Choose the word in the box to complete the text.

sarcastic	private	majority	experiences	Additionally
upbringing	counterparts	cultural	punctuality	circumstances

While you may not think it at first, there are numerous (1) cultural difference between the US and the UK that you will likely encounter.

In general, Americans are much more open than Britons. Friends and even acquaintances discuss personal thoughts and opinions that might seem private in the UK. Do not feel embarrassed if an American asks you a seemingly (2) private question. He or she is most likely sincerely curious about your thoughts and feelings and is assuming you would like to share them.

You may learn more about your American friends than you wanted to know, or you may hear more childhood stories than you care to listen to. Americans will be interested in your (3) experiences

and background as well since your (4) upbringing may differ greatly from theirs. In addition to more frequent discussion about their personal lives, there is often a greater display of photographs, and posters in dorm rooms or office spaces.

The sense of humour differs from one side of the Atlantic to the other. Americans tend to be less dry or (5) sarcastic. Some Americans may feel offended if they do not understand your humour, but after a brief explanation they will be laughing along with you.

Americans tend to believe that individuals control their (6) circumstances how much they work. This work ethic is reflected in American attitudes towards academic. Don't be surprised if you meet students who spend a vast (7) majority of their free time studying in the library.

Americans also tend to care much more for punctuality than their UK (8) ____ counterparts _____. Everything from classes to a lunch date is expected to start right on time. Along with (9) ____ **punctuality** ____ most Americans move at a faster pace than that in the UK. For example, dinners at a restaurant, even a sit-down restaurant, can be finished in under a half-hour. (10) ____ **Additionally** ____ you will not have to ask for the bill. It will be brought to you as soon as it is clear to your waiter or waitress that you are finished ordering more items.

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

JAPANESE WEDDING CUSTOMS

The Japanese (1) ____ of “san-san-kudo”, the three-by-three exchange is rich with (2) _____. It is performed by the bride and groom and both sets of cups. The first 3 represent three couples, the bride and (3) _____, and their parents. The second 3 represent three human weaknesses: hatred, passion, and ignorance. “Ku” or 9 is a lucky number in Japanese cultural, and “do” means escape from the three weaknesses.

Another highlight of this ceremony is a rosary with 21 beads that represent the couple, their families and the Buddha all joined on one string to symbolize the (4) _____ of the families. Part of the ceremony involves honoring the parents with (5) _____ of flowers, a toast, or a letter expressing their (6) _____ and gratitude.

The crane is a symbol of longevity and prosperity and so 1,001 gold origami cranes are folded to bring (7) _____, good fortune, longevity, and peace to the marriage.

The bride traditionally wears two outfits: the shiro, which is a white kimono worn for the (8) _____ and the uchikake kimono which is a patterned brocade worn at the reception.

Plenty of courses are served during the reception, but never in a multiple of four because the number four sounds like the word for (9) _____. Additionally, the different foods served all have special meanings, for example lobster might be several because red is a (10) _____ color or clams served with both shells symbolize the couple's union.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. bride | B. ritual | C. law | D. difference |
| 2. A. meaning | B. regulation | C. multiple | D. note |
| 3. A. condition | B. culture | C. relation | D. groom |
| 4. A. location | B. shell | C. union | D. gratitude |
| 5. A. wraps | B. proves | C. offers | D. improves |
| 6. A. love | B. make | C. hate | D. life |
| 7. A. nervous | B. sad | C. luck | D. bad |
| 8. A. inclusion | B. ceremony | C. approach | D. creation |

- | | | | |
|----------------|------------|----------------|----------|
| 9. A. life | B. depth | C. wedding | D. death |
| 10. A. trouble | B. problem | C. confliction | D. lucky |

Unit 8. NEW WAYS TO LEARN - KEY

PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

access	(v):	truy cập
application	(n):	ứng dụng
concentrate	(v):	tập trung
device	(n):	thiết bị
digital	(adj):	kỹ thuật số
disadvantage	(n):	nhược/ khuyết điểm
educate	(v):	giáo dục
+ education	(n):	nền giáo dục
+ educational	(adj):	có tính/ thuộc giáo dục
fingertip	(n):	đầu ngón tay
identify	(v):	nhận dạng
improve	(v):	cải thiện, cải tiến
instruction	(n):	hướng dẫn, chỉ dẫn
native	(adj):	(thuộc) bản ngữ
portable	(adj):	xách tay, có thể mang theo
software	(n):	phần mềm
syllable	(n):	âm tiết
technology	(n):	công nghệ
touch screen	(n.phr):	màn hình cảm ứng
voice recognition	(n.phr):	nhận dạng giọng nói

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. RELATIVE PRONOUNS

1. Who: dùng để thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người, làm chủ ngữ trong mệnh đề quan hệ, sau Who là "be/V".

Ex: The man is Mr. Pike. He is standing over there.

=> The man **who** is standing over there is Mr. Pike.

2. Whom: dùng để thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người, làm tân ngữ trong mệnh đề quan hệ, sau Whom là "a clause".

Ex: That is the girl. I told you about her.

=> That is the girl **whom** I told you about.

Note: Whom làm tân ngữ có thể được bỏ đi trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định.

3. Which: which dùng để thay thế cho danh từ chỉ vật, làm chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

Ex: The dress is very beautiful. I bought it yesterday.

=> The dress **which** I bought yesterday is very beautiful.

Note: Which làm tân ngữ có thể được bỏ đi trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định.

4. That: là đại từ chỉ cả người và vật, đứng sau danh từ để làm chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

Ex: This is the book. I like it best.

=> This is the book **that** I like best.

Note: + Sau dấu phẩy không bao giờ dùng **that**

+ That luôn được dùng sau các danh từ hỗn hợp (gồm cả người lẫn vật) **everything, something, anything, all little, much, none** và sau dạng so sánh nhất.

5. Whose: là đại từ quan hệ chỉ sở hữu. Whose đứng trước danh từ chỉ người hoặc vật và thay thế cho tính từ sở hữu hoặc sở hữu cách trước danh từ. Sau whose là 1 danh từ.

Ex: John found a cat. Its **leg** was broken.

=> John found a cat **whose leg** was broken.

II. RELATIVE ADVERBS

1. When: dùng để thay thế cho danh từ chỉ thời gian, When được thay cho **at/on/in + danh từ thời gian** hoặc **then**.

Ex: May Day is a day. People hold a meeting on that day.

=> May Day is a day **when** people hold a meeting.

2. Where: dùng để thay thế cho danh từ chỉ nơi chốn, When được thay cho **at/on/in + danh từ nơi chốn** hoặc **there**.

Ex: Do you know the country? I was born.

=> Do you know the country **where** I was born?

3. Why: dùng để thay thế cho danh từ chỉ lí do. **Why** thay cho **for which**.

Ex: I don't know the reason. She left him alone.

=> I don't know the reason *why* she left him alone.

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. blow B. modern C. electronic D. concentrate

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 2. A. distract | B. tablet | C. backpack | D. debate |
| 3. A. <u>d</u> ecoy | B. e <u>d</u> ucate | C. concord <u>u</u> | D. <u>d</u> ecrease |
| 4. A. <u>e</u> xpensive | B. <u>e</u> ncounter | C. <u>e</u> xcellent | D. <u>e</u> ncourage |
| 5. A. <u>o</u> perate | B. <u>c</u> onsider | C. <u>c</u> onclude | D. <u>c</u> orrect |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. A. identify | B. critical | C. technology | D. eliminate |
| 2. A. continue | B. amazing | C. annoying | D. calculate |
| 3. A. disappear | B. defining | C. distracting | D. specific |
| 4. A. remember | B. embarrass | C. disappoint | D. defining |
| 5. A. Internet | B. creative | C. portable | D. benefit |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Complete the sentences, using relative clauses.

- On the classroom blog, a teacher can upload video and image illustrations on specific subjects, **which/ who** can help students learn easily.
- Parents **whose/ who** have to pay for mobile devices may be happy with the new method of teaching and its benefits.
- Students will enjoy doing many activities, including games, puzzles, **who/ whose** purposes are the development of team spirits.
- Several students **which/ who** are able to touch and interact with the smart table at the same time will work together more effectively.
- The learning applications **which/ who** students can participate in using the smart table will encourage them to work together to solve problems.
- There are interactive activities **which/ who** are available to be downloaded from the Internet.
- The smart table has been used in several schools, **which/ who** brings many benefits to our students.
- It is an electronic device **which/ who** students can start using as soon as the teacher has turned it on, without a lot of training earlier.
- Teachers **which/ who** introduce activities to the whole class can work with smaller groups on the smart table to introduce discussions about the subject matter.
- The applications **which/ who** come with the smart table can help students learn various subjects at school.

II. Put the correct word in the box to complete the sentences below.

physical electronic benefits digital motivate personal

relative technology defining applications disruptive mobile

1. The phrase ' ____ **digital** ____ natives' refers to people who are familiar with computers and the Internet from an early age.
2. The Internet will ____ **motivate** ____ students to study more effectively.
3. Please don't ask him questions about his family. He hates answering ____ **personal** ____ questions.
4. Our students are very excited when they have opportunities to do ____ **physical** ____ exercise.
5. My son, who is a promising pianist, is now interested in composing ____ **electronic** ____ music.
6. Many teachers have now understood the ____ **benefits** ____ that mobile devices can bring.
7. I'm looking for some new ____ **applications** ____ to put on my smartphone to improve my English pronunciation.
8. The ringing sound from mobile phones is ____ **disruptive** ____ and annoying in the classroom.
9. People are now familiar with the term m-learning or ____ **mobile** ____ learning, which focuses on the use of personal electric devices.
10. In the grammar part of this unit we study ____ **relative** ____ clauses.
11. That laptop, which has the latest ____ **technology** ____, is very expensive.
12. Some of my classmates think that it is not easy to know which clause is ____ **defining** ____ and which is non-defining.

III. Use 'who', 'which', 'that' or 'whose' to complete each of the sentences.

1. Vinh, ____ **who** ____ is only two and a half, likes to play games on a tablet.
2. My tablet, ____ **which** ____ is two years old, still works quite well.
3. Personal electronic devices ____ **which** ____ distract students from their class work are banned in most schools.
4. Students ____ **who** ____ have smartphones can use them to look up words in an electronic dictionary.
5. Some scientists think that children ____ **whose** ____ parents allow them to use electronic devices early will have more advantages in the future.
6. The laptop ____ **whose** ____ cover is decorated with funny animals belongs to my aunt.

IV. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

1. Laptops and wireless technologies allow students to access _____ **information** _____ relevant to class topics immediately. INFORM
2. By allowing our students to use digital devices in class, we are creating an opportunity to teach them to think _____ **critically** _____ about technology use in their education and life. CRITIC
3. Digital devices offer an opportunity to _____ **educate** _____ students about media use. EDUCATION
4. Most of the teachers see the new classroom technology as _____ **useful** _____ in the educational process. USE
5. Almost every question students have in class is at their fingertips, _____ **keeping** _____ them connected with what is going on around them. KEEP
PORT
6. The iPad, which is much more _____ **portable** _____ than the laptop, has the same multi-touch interface as the iPod Touch. LEARN
7. Students who are English-language _____ **learners** _____ benefit greatly from using specialized programs on their laptops. IMPROVEMENT
8. Teachers are always looking at new ways to develop and _____ **improve** _____ their teaching. NECESSITY
9. With the easy Internet access and a variety of educational apps, smartphones have become the tools _____ **necessary** _____ to improve student learning. RESOLUTELY
10. With its high- _____ **resolution** _____ touch screen, the iPad is very useful for many tasks in class.

V. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. I see some girls _____ are pretty.
A. whom B. which **C. who** D. they
2. Give back the money _____ you took.
A. it B. who C. whom **D. which**
3. He was killed by a man _____ friends we know.
A. whose B. which C. whom D. that
4. He spoke to the messengers with _____ you were leaving.
A. which **B. whom** C. whose D. that

5. We captured a town ____ is in Spain.
 A. whom B. where **C. which** D. it
6. The farmers ____ we saw were in the field.
 A. whose B. which C. they **D. whom**
7. The women ____ I gave the money were glad.
A. to whom B. to that C. for whom D. for that
8. I know a boy ____ name is John.
 A. who **B. whose** C. whom D. that
9. The man ____ you sent to the general has reported the victory.
 A. whose B. which **C. whom** D. he
10. I saw those slaves ____ had been led to the city.
 A. whose B. which C. whom **D. who**
11. While a child learns how to use educational ____, she also develops a(n) ____ to analyze, synthesize and evaluate information.
 A. lessons – knowledge B. lessons - ability **C. software - ability** D. software - knowledge
12. E-books are typically ____ through a student's personal device, such as a notebook, tablet or cellphone.
 A. concentrated **B. accessed** C. made D. stored
13. Students can also use word processing applications to ____ their vocabulary.
A. improve B. learn C. prove D. study
14. While not all apps are ____ on Android devices, the large majority of them can be accessed on iPhones, iPads, and iPods.
 A. useful B. keen **C. available** D. fond
15. When used the right way, mobile technology has the ____ to help students learn more and understand that knowledge.
 A. ability B. advantage C. development **D. potential**
16. Mr. Brown has created a list of the most useful apps for the classroom, ____ is available on his blog.
 A. that **B. which** C. who D. whose
17. The school maintains learning profiles ____ provide detailed information about each student's strengths and weaknesses, ____ teachers use to personalize learning.
 A. who - that B. they - that **C. that - which** D. whose - they

18. Many teachers have worked to change their traditional classrooms into an environment _____ students can use the latest technology for their learning process.

- A. whose B. who **C. where** D. that

19. My youngest son, _____ may be quiet or shy in a classroom, may become active in a social learning situation made possible by digital devices.

- A. that **B. who** C. whose D. whom

20. Some teachers _____ levels of IT are not very high may resist teaching with electronic devices.

- A. who B. whom **C. whose** D. which

VI. Identify the one underlined word or phrase that must be changed to make the sentence correct.

1. On the way home, we saw a lot of men, women, and dogs which were playing in the park. → **that**

- A B **C** D

2. Tobacco was used ceremonially by the Indians, whom from settlers borrowed it as a luxury. → **from whom**

- A B **C** D

3. The man whom remained in the office was the manager. → **who**

- A **B** C D

4. This novel, which written by a well known writer, should be read. → **written**

- A** B C D

5. My friend George, that arrived late, was not permitted to enter the class. → **who**

- A** B C D

6. This is the only place which we can obtain scientific information. → **where**

- A B **C** D

7. I don't know where could he have gone to so early in the morning. → **why he could**

- A** B C D

8. Chemistry is one branch of science on that most of the industries depend. → **which**

- A B **C** D

9. 1975 is the year in when the revolution took place. → **which**

- A **B** C D

10. Mr. Brown, that teaches me English, is coming today. → **who**

- A** B C D

C. READING

I. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only one word in each space.

sites	settings	ways	taken	application
horizons	virtual	whether	potential	that

Young children are increasingly using tablets as well as smartphones and other devices with touch screens in early education (1) **settings** and with family members.

Tammy and Rose, age 4, have been studying sunflowers with their classmates. They want to sing and record a song about sunflowers while creating a drawing, using a(n) (2) **application** on the tablet. The girls have coordinated their efforts and are happy with the result.

To help the class learn more about sunflowers, Kathryn, Tammy and Rose's teacher, used the tablet to find online (3) **sites** with photos and facts. She then took the children on a (4) **virtual** tour of Van Gogh's sunflower paintings. They read and discussed an electronic picture book about Van Gogh's life. The children had already examined real sunflowers and their parts, made sketches, read informational texts and stories, counted seeds, and (5) **taken** part in a variety of investigations, touching on every learning domain. The teacher's use of the tablet together with early practical learning activities expanded the children's (6) **horizons**. Activities offered on the tablet provided new (7) **ways** for the children to represent and share what they learned.

Tablets have the (8) **potential** to be powered tools for early learning. The choices we make about how they are used determine (9) **whether** the technology is helpful or not. We need to develop "digital literacy" skills and decide how to use these new tools in ways (10) **that** can support every child's healthy development and learning.

II. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

ELECTRONIC DEVICES THAT HELP YOU LEARN ENGLISH

There are many ways to learn English. With the increase in new technology, many companies are now providing new electronic (1) _____ to help people learn English more quickly.

You can (2) _____ the lessons from an English translation Internet site and put them on your iPod. Because it is portable, you can listen and learn anywhere.

English audio tapes and English audio CDs are a (3) _____ method of learning English. All you need is a cassette or CD player. You can learn in many (4) _____ including your car.

An electric translator or (5) ____ dictionary is an excellent tool one can use when traveling on a vacation, on a business trip, studying languages, conversing with foreign people, and in a variety of other situations. Many devices have a number of attributes that include advanced text-to-speech and voice recognition technologies. There are many good-quality electronic dictionaries on the market. (6) ____ on which one you purchase, there is an extensive range of vocabulary that can include up to one million words or (7) _____. There are also electronic dictionaries that contain common expressions and phrases, grammar references, and much more. Two popular hand-held English electronic dictionaries include the Talking Electronic Dictionary and the Audio Phrasebook. They include hundreds of thousands of words, definitions, and thesaurus entries. You can view the word on the screen and hear it spoken. It is likely that you have your own language (8) _____. Just speak into the device and you will be provided with an (9) _____ translation voice response.

Choosing an electronic device that helps you learn English has made learning and speaking English easier, faster, and more enjoyable. Before you purchase a device, make sure you research each product to find the English learning tool that (10) _____ your lifestyle.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. asks | B. ceremonies | C. requests | D. devices |
| 2. A. bride | B. regulations | C. download | D. notes |
| 3. A. condition | B. great | C. relation | D. wealth |
| 4. A. beans | B. boxes | C. presents | D. locations |
| 5. A. bad | B. electronic | C. luck | D. interest |
| 6. A. Depending | B. allows | C. stops | D. refuses |
| 7. A. existence | B. dead | C. more | D. divorce |
| 8. A. flat | B. interpreter | C. house | D. apartment |
| 9. A. intelligible | B. contribution | C. difficulty | D. reception |
| 10. A. troubles | B. problems | C. ovals | D. complements |

D. WRITING

I. Combine each pair of sentences into one. Use comma (,) if necessary.

- The girl looked very upset. Her electronic dictionary broke down.

The girl whose electronic dictionary broke down looked very upset.

- His grandmother had a great influence on his life. She was a hard – working woman.

His grandmother, who was a hard – working woman, had a great influence on his life.

- Mai is interested in physics. I don't like it.

Mai is interested in physics, which I don't like.

- Tom has hundreds of books. They are all in foreign languages.

Tom has hundreds of books, which are all in foreign languages.

5. Shakespeare was a famous playwright. His birthplace was Stratford - upon - Avon.

Shakespeare, whose birthplace was Stratford - upon - Avon, was a famous playwright.

6. I will always remember the teacher. He taught me how to read and write.

I will always remember the teacher who taught me how to read and write.

II. Complete the sentences, using a relative pronoun.

1. The pub is opposite the Town Hall. I first met my wife there.

The pub where I first met my wife is opposite the Town Hall.

2. He was sitting on a chair. It was uncomfortable.

He was sitting on a chair which was uncomfortable.

3. He smokes cigarettes. They are very strong.

He smokes cigarettes which are very strong.

4. Let me see the pictures. You took them at Peter's wedding.

Let me see the pictures which you took at Peter's wedding.

5. Some people only think about money. I don't like them.

I don't like some people who only think about money.

6. Do you know that lady? I repaired her car.

Do you know that lady whose car I repaired?

7. That girl is Swedish. Tom is in love with her.

That girl is Swedish who Tom is in love with.

8. John has bought a house. There are ghosts in that house.

John has bought a house where/ in which there are ghosts.

9. Some people drive drunk. I never travel with them.

I never travel with some people who drive drunk.

10. A man stole £10,000 from a bank. The police have caught him.

A man whom the police have caught stole £10,000 from a bank.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>th</u> row | B. <u>th</u> ough | C. <u>th</u> ick | D. <u>th</u> ought |
| 2. A. <u>ch</u> eck | B. <u>ch</u> ease | C. <u>ch</u> emistry | D. <u>ch</u> erry |
| 3. A. <u>re</u> sult | B. <u>ev</u> olution | C. <u>h</u> undred | D. <u>bu</u> ttion |
| 4. A. <u>h</u> ear | B. <u>re</u> ad | C. <u>me</u> an | D. <u>re</u> ach |

5. A. content B. electricity C. species D. sentence

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. expensive B. different C. personal D. general
2. A. delicious B. encourage C. excited D. digital
3. A. practical B. official C. successful D. surprising
4. A. different B. imagine C. relative D. following
5. A. astonished B. religion C. excellent D. effective

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. The people ____ courage you praised are now citizens.
A. whose B. which C. whom D. that
2. Your folks ____ live in farmhouses do not like the life of the city.
A. whose B. who C. they D. which
3. Those towns ____ you were looking at in Gaul are small.
A. who B. where C. which D. whom
4. In Helvetia I have seen a large city ____ many people live.
A. at which B. which C. on which D. in which
5. Tom, ____ is not my friend is my enemy.
A. who B. which C. whom D. A&B
6. I sent my friend the books ____ I had written.
A. who B. which C. whom D. what
7. Behind the farmhouse there was a large garden, ____ the farmer and his sons were working
A. for which B. which C. in which D. that
8. Did you see the men ____ I gave the money?
A. to whom B. which C. from whom D. to that
9. She sends me the book ____ she ____ two years ago.
A. whom / writes B. whose /wrote C. which/ writes D. which / wrote
10. The man ____ spoke to John is my brother.
A. whom B. who C. whose D. which
11. A teacher can create a classroom blog ____ they post notes and assignments for students.
A. where B. that C. who D. whose
12. Students ____ seem to be taking notes on their laptop are sometimes surfing the Internet in class.

- A. who B. which C. whose D. they
13. Notebooks, tablets and cellphones are all technology ____ students are accustomed to and can use as learning aids.
- A. when B. whose C. that D. where
14. All smartphones ____ storage hardware is big can store downloaded audio books.
- A. which B. who C. whose D. that
15. Science teachers ____ use the 3D projectors and other electronic devices can easily illustrate the lessons.
- A. whom B. what C. who D. whose
16. Letting students use their own digital devices in class can improve the ____ experience in many ways.
- A. educated B. educational C. uneducated D. educator
17. The use of mobile apps in learning has been very ____.
- A. stressing B. wasteful C. promising D. dangerous
18. We are looking to find ____ ways to stimulate learning and continually trying to improve the way we teach.
- A. portable and mobile B. new and creative
- C. ineffective and inappropriate D. shocking and amazing
19. Mobile devices increase opportunities for learning after school hours and increase teachers' ____ and their comfort levels with technology.
- A. behavior B. lines C. ability D. paths
20. The teacher was surprised to discover that his students are quieter and more focused on their assignments when they are allowed to listen to their soft music during ____.
- A. private work B. private homework
- C. individual homework D. individual classwork

IV. Use 'who', 'which', 'that' or 'whose' to complete each of the sentences.

1. People ____ **whose** ____ work involves using a computer for most of the day may suffer from headaches.
2. Mr Xuan Truong, ____ **who** ____ was my first teacher, received an award for teaching excellence.
3. That's Peter, ____ **whose** ____ father has just come back from the Philippines.
4. That media player, ____ **which** ____ I often use to practise English, has some great apps.
5. The house ____ **which** ____ my father built is big.

6. The woman _____ **who** _____ you have just spoken to is my favourite English teacher.

V. Complete the sentences with the following given words.

digital personal mobile technology electronic applications

1. My son, who is a promising pianist, is now interested in composing _____ **electronic** _____ music.

2. Please don't ask him questions about his family. He hates answering _____ **personal** _____ questions.

3. The phrase ' _____ **digital** _____ natives' refers to people who are familiar with computers and the Internet from an early age.

4. I'm looking for some new _____ **applications** _____ to put on my smartphone to improve my English pronunciation.

5. That laptop, which has the latest _____ **technology** _____, is very expensive.

6. People are now familiar with the term m - learning or _____ **mobile** _____ learning, which focuses on the use of personal electronic devices.

VI. Choose the word in the box to complete the text.

access to enable both make up to us
tool teach have seen environments through

Technology has become an essential (1) _____ **tool** _____ in our lives. Schools should find ways of integrating new technologies into classrooms so that students find it easy to learn new subjects as well as (2) _____ **enable** _____ teachers to explain subjects in detail using visual formats. Using technological devices like computers will (3) _____ **make** _____ education more fun and interesting for the students. The past ten years (4) _____ **have seen** _____ tremendous change in educational technologies and it is time to bring these technologies to our students in the classroom so that they learn easily and efficiently. Teachers will need to learn how to use these technologies so that they (5) _____ **teach** _____ their students on how to use them.

We have seen that private business community has found ways of improving the way we learn by creating educational applications for (6) _____ **both** _____ computers and mobile phones. With a good use of these applications, schools can improve on how students learn and how they get (7) _____ **access to** _____ academic information.

New application like YouTube can be used in video and visual education. If a student can learn (8) _____ **through** _____ visual or video illustrations, they will always remember that subject being explained, because the brain can easily understand and remember visual objects.

The development of online and offline educational (9) ___ **environments** ___ will make learning so simple. Now it is (10) ___ **up to us** ___ to apply these educational technologies in the classroom and make learning easier.

VII. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Electronic learning is a technology of education that implies self-motivation, communication, efficiency, and technology. E-learning is effective as it (1) ___ distances because the e-learning content is designed (2) ___ media that can be (3) ___ from properly equipped computers, and other means of internet accessible technology.

E-learning has its own advantages. However, the most important advantages (4) ___ in the reduction of time, efforts and cost.

Furthermore, we can talk about the following (5) ___ of E-learning with the increasing of communication between the student and themselves and between the student and the school a fast and easy way is needed to bring everybody together.

Throughout different directions such as discussing forums, e-mail, and chat rooms, (6) ___ think that these things increase and motivate students to participate and react with the subjects in question.

Another advantage of e-learning is that it makes all students feel equal. Since the communication tools give (7) ___ students the opportunity to express his own opinion clearly and directly at any time without being embarrassed, in contrary to the traditional teaching halls (8) ___ don't have such a feature due to the bad distribution of the tables or because of shyness or other reasons.

E-learning provides teachers with great facilities that are accessible out of working hours, that is because the learner can send the inquiries to the teacher through the e-mail at (9) ___ time, yet this feature is more useful and suitable for the teacher instead of being instead of being restricted at his desk.

By e-learning the attendance is not necessary as the new technology provides the communication (10) ___ without the need to be available in a specific place or time.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. instrument | B. equipment | C. machine | D. eliminates |
| 2. A. with | B. enables | C. make | D. makes |
| 3. A. add | B. put | C. cause | D. accessed |
| 4. A. see | B. saw | C. lay | D. has seen |
| 5. A. ask | B. advantages | C. learn | D. request |
| 6. A. only | B. either | C. researchers | D. not only |

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 7. A. each | B. possibility of | C. method of | D. right about |
| 8. A. about | B. which | C. of | D. for |
| 9. A. settings | B. sights | C. surroundings | D. any |
| 10. A. up to our | B. time to us | C. methods | D. in time |

Unit 9. PRESERVING THE ENVIRONMENT - KEY
PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

aquatic	(adj)	dưới nước, sống ở trong nước
article	(n)	bài báo
chemical	(n)/ (adj)	hóa chất, hóa học
confuse	(v)	làm lẫn lộn, nhầm lẫn
+ confusion	(n)	sự lẫn lộn, nhầm lẫn
consumption	(n)	sự tiêu thụ, tiêu dùng
contaminate	(v)	làm bẩn, nhiễm
damage	(v)	làm hại, làm hỏng
deforestation	(n)	sự phá rừng, sự phát quang
degraded	(adj)	giảm sút chất lượng
deplete	(v)	làm suy yếu, cạn kiệt
+ depletion	(n)	sự suy yếu, cạn kiệt
destruction	(n)	sự phá hủy, tiêu diệt
ecosystem	(n)	hệ sinh thái
editor	(n)	biên tập viên
fertilizer	(n)	phân bón
fossil fuel	(n.phr)	nhiên liệu hóa thạch (làm từ sự phân hủy của động vật hay thực vật)
		tiền sử)
global warming	(n.phr)	sự nóng lên toàn cầu

greenhouse effect	(n.phr)	hiệu ứng nhà kính
influence	(v,n)	ảnh hưởng, tác dụng
inorganic	(adj)	vô cơ
long-term	(adj)	dài hạn, lâu dài
mass-media	(n.phr)	truyền thông đại chúng
pesticide	(n)	thuốc trừ sâu
polar ice melting		sự tan băng ở địa cực
pollute	(v)	gây ô nhiễm
+ pollutant	(n)	chất ô nhiễm
+ pollution	(n)	sự ô nhiễm
preserve	(y)	giữ gìn, bảo tồn
+ preservation	(n)	sự bảo tồn, duy trì
protect	(v)	bảo vệ, che chở
+ protection	(n)	sự bảo vệ, che chở
sewage	(n)	nước cống
solution	(n)	giải pháp, cách giải quyết
vegetation	(n)	cây cỏ, thực vật

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. REPORTED SPEECH

1. Statement: Câu tường thuật

Form:

S + asked / told sb + that + Mệnh đề lùi thì

Ex: “I will come back tomorrow” Mary said.

Mary said that she would come back the next day.

Note: said => said that / said to sb => told sb that

2. Command: Câu yêu cầu, đề nghị

Form:

S+ asked / told + sb + (not) + to V

Ex: “Don't talk in class” The teacher said to us.

The teacher told us not to talk in class.

3. Yes / No Questions

Form:

S + asked + (sb) + if / whether + Mệnh đề lùi thì

Ex: "Can you speak English, Diep?" I asked.

I asked Diep if she could speak English.

4. Wh-Question

Form:

S + asked + (sb) + Wh + Mệnh đề lùi thì

Ex: "Where are you from?" He asked me

He asked me where I were from.

5. Không lùi thì

Form:

S + V (hiện tại) + (sb) + Mệnh đề không lùi thì

Ex: "I'm very exhausted now" she says.

She says she is very exhausted now.

* BẢNG LÙI THÌ

DIRECT SPEECH

Simple present

Present continuous

Present perfect

Simple past

Past continuous

Future (will/shall)

Near future (be going to V)

Can

May

Must

Needn't

REPORTED SPEECH

Simple past

Past continuous

Past perfect

Past perfect

Past perfect continuous

Future in the past (would/ should)

Was/were going to V

Could

Might

Had to

Didn't have to

* BẢNG LÙI TRẠNG NGỮ

DIRECT SPEECH

this

these

here

now

REPORTED SPEECH

that

those

there

then

ago	before (earlier)
today	that day
tonight	that night
tomorrow	the next day
	the following day
	the day after
yesterday	the previous day
	the day before
next + N	the following + N
	the N + after
last + N	the previous + N
	the N + before

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>g</u> overnment | B. bor <u>r</u> owing | C. <u>p</u> rogram | D. <u>p</u> romotion |
| 2. A. <u>p</u> olar | B. <u>l</u> and | C. <u>i</u> mpact | D. <u>a</u> nimal |
| 3. A. poss <u>e</u> ssion | B. acc <u>e</u> ss | C. <u>p</u> roperty | D. Amer <u>e</u> ican |
| 4. A. rele <u>a</u> se | B. <u>e</u> asy | C. <u>t</u> hreat | D. incre <u>a</u> se |
| 5. A. <u>p</u> re <u>s</u> erve | B. con <u>s</u> erve | C. foss <u>i</u> l | D. discuss <u>u</u> |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>pro</u> tection | B. <u>cha</u> rity | C. <u>che</u> mical | D. <u>neigh</u> bourhood |
| 2. A. <u>sub</u> marine | B. <u>assi</u> gnment | C. <u>dis</u> posal | D. <u>deple</u> tion |
| 3. A. <u>che</u> mical | B. <u>solu</u> tion | C. <u>dis</u> posal | D. <u>ero</u> sion |
| 4. A. <u>scie</u> ntist | B. <u>che</u> mical | C. <u>inju</u> ry | D. <u>annou</u> ncement |
| 5. A. <u>evid</u> ence | B. <u>prin</u> ciple | C. <u>all</u> ergy | D. <u>aware</u> ness |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Change into the reported speech.

1. He said "I have already read this book".

He said that he had already read that book.

2. Tom said to his sister "I want to buy a gift for our mother".

Tom told his sister that he wanted to buy a gift for thier mother.

3. Mrs Brown said "Where are they living?"

Mrs Brown asked where they were living.

4. "Do you know the girl over there?" Tom said.

Tom asked me if I knew the girl over there.

5. Mother said "Nam, why don't you go to bed?"

Mother told Nam not to go to bed.

6. "May I use your telephone?" said my neighbor.

My neighbor asked me to use my telephone.

7. The manager said "Come into my office, please?"

The manager asked to come in to his office.

8. "Do not get off the bus while it's going" said the driver.

The driver asked us not to get off the bus while it was going.

9. She asked to the little boy "Take a look at yourself in the mirror!"

She told the little boy to take a look at himself in the mirror.

10. "Don't put your elbow on the table!" he said.

He asked me not to put my elbow on the table.

II. Put the correct word for the sentences below.

deforestation

preserve

greenhouse effect

fossil fuels

damage

depletion

pollute

global warming

1. The **greenhouse effect** occurs when the earth's atmosphere traps certain gases such as carbon dioxide as well as water vapour. This makes the earth's surface warmer.

2. **Damage** is harm or injury that makes something less valuable or able to function.

3. To **preserve** is to keep and protect something from damage, change or waste.

4. **Fossil fuels** are non-renewable energy sources such as coal, fuel oil and natural gas formed from dead plants and animals underground.

5. **Global warming** is the gradual increase of temperature on the earth's surface due to greenhouse effect.

6. **Depletion** is the using up or reducing something like energy or resources.

7. To **pollute** is to make air, water, or soil dirty or unclean.

8. ____ **Deforestation** ____ is the removal or cutting down of all trees in an area for urban use and farm lands.

III. Choose the correct words in the bracket to complete the sentences.

preserved forestation confused erosion
global environment attraction environmental

1. Scientists have tried to assess the impact of human activities on the ____ **environment** ____.
2. We should have ____ **forestation** ____ plans to replace the trees cut down for farmland use in the region.
3. Oceanic oil spills become a major ____ **environmental** ____ problem, chiefly a result of intensified petroleum exploitation.
4. The rhino habitat has been perfectly ____ **preserved** ____ in the region.
5. The students are somewhat ____ **confused** ____ by the usage of the words “preservation” and “conservation”.
6. Many climatologists believe that the decline in mountain glaciers is one of the first observation signs of ____ **global** ____ warming.
7. Rising sea levels can add to the ____ **erosion** ____ of our coastlines.
8. Waste water has polluted seas and lakes surrounding tourist ____ **attraction** ____, damaging the flora and fauna.

IV. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

1. In banana plantations, flooding occurs partly because of deforestation and partly because of poorly ____ **constructed** ____ drainage systems. CONSTRUCT
 2. African and Asian elephant numbers fell dramatically in the 19th and 20th centuries, ____ **largely** ____ due to the ivory trade and habitat loss. LARGE
 3. The environmental consequences of large dams are numerous, including direct impacts to the biological, chemical and ____ **physical** ____ properties of rivers. PHYSICS
 4. In areas with high concentrations of tourist activities and attractive natural attractions, waste ____ **disposal** ____ is a serious problem. DISPOSE
- FERTILIZE
- ERODE

5. Unlike pesticides, _____ **fertilizers** _____ are not directly toxic but their presence in fresh water changes the nutrient system. SUSTAIN
6. _____ **Erosion** _____ caused by deforestation can also lead to increased flooding. DEplete
7. The Earth's natural resources should be consumed at a _____ **sustainable** _____ level. DEFOREST
8. Dealing with resource _____ **depletion** _____ requires a broad range of strategies. ENVIRONMENT
9. Experts predict that the world's rain forests could completely disappear in 100 years at the current rate of _____ **deforestation** _____.
10. Mining is an extractive industry, often with huge _____ **environmental** _____ and social impacts.

V. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. Jack asked me _____.
 A. where do you come from? B. where I came from
 C. where I come from D. where did I come from?
2. She asked me _____ I liked pop music.
 A. when B. what C. if D. x
3. The doctor _____ him to take more exercise.
 A. told B. tell C. have told D. are telling
4. I wanted to know _____ return home.
 A. when would she B. when will she C. when she will D. when she would
5. Claire told me that her father _____ a race horse.
 A. owns B. owned C. owning D. A and B
6. What did that man say _____?
 A. at you B. for you C. to you D. you
7. I rang my friend in Australia yesterday, and she said it _____ raining there.
 A. is B. were C. has been D. was
8. The builders have _____ that everything will be ready on time.
 A. promised B. promise C. promises D. promising

9. The doctor ____ him to take more exercise.

- A. told B. tell C. have told D. are telling

10. The last time I saw Linda, she looked very relaxed. She explained she'd been on holiday the ____ week.

- A. ago B. following C. next D. previous

11. Fossil fuels which are non-renewable pollute the air and cause air ____.

- A. pollution B. solution C. contaminate D. consumption

12. Recycling provides a method of reducing the amount of waste materials that gets to the landfills - thus ____ it less probable for environmental pollution to take place.

- A. making B. doing C. causing D. trying

13. If wastes are thrown ____, they can cause pollution in water, land and air.

- A. inappropriately B. disappointingly C. eco-friendly D. favourably

14. Trees not only bring nature to urban areas, but they also help clean the air by absorbing pollutants, ____ oxygen, ____ water, and grow food.

- A. to provide - to save B. to provide - save C. providing - saving D. provide - save

15. Air pollution is such a serious ____ that it has been a direct factor in the ____ of millions of people each year.

- A. threat - death B. threat - deaths C. threaten - death D. threaten - deaths

16. Sometimes it's better not to buy something new, and buy it ____ instead.

- A. used B. usable C. use D. useful

17. He asked the children ____ the river.

- A. don't pollute B. if they don't pollute C. not to pollute D. not polluting

18. They asked me how many students ____ in the school.

- A. there were B. were there C. there are D. are there

19. He told me that ____.

- A. he would participate in the conservation campaign yesterday
B. he had participated in the conservation campaign the previous day
C. he participated in the conservation campaign the previous day
D. he has participated in the conservation campaign the previous day

20. He asked, "Why did she write the article on conservation?"

He asked why ____.

A. she had written the article on conservation
conservation

B. she has written the article on

C. she wrote the article on conservation
conservation

D. did she write the article on

VI. Identify the one underlined word or phrase that must be changed to make the sentence correct.

1. The (A) deplete of the ozone layer (B) is not (C) a good thing (D) for the Earth. → **depletion**

2. We (A) need (B) to protect the (C) environmental for the (D) next generation. → **environment**

3. Deforestation will lead (A) to the extinction of rare (B) animal due to the loss of (C) their habitats, and (D) extreme floods and land erosion. → **animals**

4. (A) Worldwide rainforest (B) preserve has (C) been the aim (D) of many environmentalists. → **preservation**

5. (A) Person should (B) make efforts to preserve the environment (C) for the sake of (D) themselves and their children. → **People**

6. Environmental (A) pollute is (B) one of the greatest and most urgent (C) problems in modern (D) times. → **pollution**

7. Many countries (A) have signed up to international agreements (B) which aim (C) to reduce the negative (D) impaction of climate change. → **impact**

8. (A) Any amateur (B) gardener knows (C) plantation need two things (D) to survive: sunlight and water. → **plants**

C. READING

I. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only one word in each space.

home	balance	way	warming	forests
ecosystems	value	of	amount	life

PROTECTING BIODIVERSITY

Protecting biodiversity is now very essential since biodiversity is crucial for reducing climate pollution. If we don't protect biodiversity, the effects could be as harmful as the effects of global (1) warming itself. This is especially true with tropical (2) forests - they are critical to fighting climate change and (3) home to more species than any other ecosystem type. In other words, protecting biodiversity is essential for our well-being, and biodiversity helps to (4) balance the nature.

Biodiversity is an important part of sustainable development. As we know, sustainable development is considered as a major target for industry as well as planning system. However, the only (5) way to achieve this target is to protect biodiversity. Tiny plants that grow also absorb large (6) amount of carbon dioxide. That is why protecting diversity is essential.

In fact, biodiversity protection is very much important since biodiversity is a fundamental component of (7) life on Earth. It creates complex (8) ecosystems that could never be reproduced by humans. The (9) value of that biodiversity is immeasurable, and thus must be protected. Finally, we both want and need biodiversity. We continue harming the natural environment without realizing the impact. We should be aware (10) of protecting biodiversity.

II. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

World Environment Day which is (1) on 5th June every year in an important day in the calendar of the United Nations. It is one of the ways the United Nations uses to advocate for environmental (2) and call for political action.

Every year, UNEP (the Environment Program of the United Nations) develops a theme which is used globally to raise (3) and call for support from governments, organizations, and individuals from all over the world.

The theme for 2015 was "Seven Billion Dreams. One Planet. Consume with Care". This would also serve as the slogan for the World Environmental Day 2015. The meeting of this theme and slogan is that we have five (4) with more than seven billion people combined. Although we have about 7 billion people, we just have one planet that we live and survive. The surface area is limited, shelter and food also limited. If we continue using the available natural (5) as we do today, our future generations may be (6) to go hungry and without homes. This is why it is of vital importance to consume (7) food that is available with care. Stop the wastage and use whatever resource that is available according to need, not greed.

"Join the race to make the world a better place" is the theme and (8) for 2016 UN World Environment Day. This slogan (9) a clear message and asks everyone to get involved (10) making the world a better place to live in.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. A. found | B. acted | C. held | D. celebrated |
| 2. A. experience | B. protection | C. decrease | D. pollution |
| 3. A. feature | B. activity | C. ability | D. awareness |
| 4. A. areas | B. continents | C. plants | D. stars |
| 5. A. sources | B. resources | C. balances | D. increase |

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|------------|------------|
| 6. A. had | B. made | C. forced | D. accused |
| 7. A. which | B. whatever | C. who | D. what |
| 8. A. slogan | B. flag | C. poster | D. brand |
| 9. A. requests | B. asks | C. carries | D. depends |
| 10. A. from | B. to | C. within | D. in |

D. WRITING

I. Change into the reported speech.

1. Mr Jones gave the people gloves and said to them: "Protect yourselves from germs."

Mr Jones gave the people gloves and told them to protect themselves from germs.

2. Nam said, "The environment is severely affected by pollution."

Nam said (that) the environment was severely affected by pollution.

3. Mai said, "The burning of fossil fuels leads to air pollution."

Mai said (that) the burning of fossil fuels led to air pollution.

4. Peter said, "Intensive insecticide and pesticide sprays in agriculture make the soil contaminated."

Peter said (that) intensive insecticide and pesticide sprays in agriculture make the soil contaminated.

5. "It's confusing because there are too many web pages about the environment" Nam said.

Nam said that it was confusing because there were too many web pages about the environment.

6. "Air pollution is one of the causes of the greenhouse effect" scientists said.

Scientists said that air pollution was one of the causes of the greenhouse effect.

7. "Pollution is one of the problems in my neighbourhood" Nam said.

Nam said that pollution was one of the problems in his neighbourhood.

8. "More people are aware of the preservation of natural resources" the editor said.

The editor said that more people were aware of the preservation of natural resources.

9. "We are discussing the protection of the natural environment" the students told their teacher.

The students told their teacher that they were discussing the protection of the natural environment.

10. "Use the web search engine to find the information that you need" Nam's father told him.

Nam's father told him to use the web search engine to find the information that he needed.

II. Change into the reported speech.

1. Mr Jones was very sad and said "All this rubbish is killing fish and other sea creatures."

Mr Jones was very sad and said that all that rubbish was killing fish and other sea creatures.

2. "We can clean the beach together." said Nick.

Nick said that they could clean the beach together.

3. "I'll ask our friends and neighbours to come and help us" Mary said to them.

Mary told them that she would ask their friends and neighbours to come and help them.

4. "I'm so happy to hear that, children" Mr Jones said to his children.

Mr Jones told his children that he was so happy to hear that.

5. Tony said "The disposal of untreated sewage in rivers and oceans leads to water pollution."

Tony said (that) the disposal of untreated sewage in rivers and oceans led to water pollution.

6. Mary said "Loud and annoying sounds from innumerable vehicles in the highway nearby cause noise pollution."

Mary said (that) loud and annoying sounds from innumerable vehicles in the highway nearby cause noise pollution.

7. Mai said "The rising sea level is product of global warming, a natural phenomenon. The only unnatural thing about global warming is the accelerated rate at which it is happening."

Mai said (that) the rising sea level was product of global warming, a natural phenomenon. The only unnatural thing about global warming was the accelerated rate at which it was happening.

8. Linda said "Environmental pollution is an impact of human activities on the environment."

Linda said (that) environmental pollution was an impact of human activities on the environment.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>book</u> | B. <u>look</u> | C. <u>floor</u> | D. <u>good</u> |
| 2. A. <u>contaminate</u> | B. <u>natural</u> | C. <u>damage</u> | D. <u>area</u> |
| 3. A. <u>hate</u> | B. <u>mate</u> | C. <u>cake</u> | D. <u>manage</u> |
| 4. A. <u>contaminate</u> | B. <u>deforest</u> | C. <u>pollute</u> | D. <u>protect</u> |
| 5. A. <u>pesticide</u> | B. <u>impact</u> | C. <u>focus</u> | D. <u>practical</u> |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. composer | B. invention | C. position | D. <u>volunteer</u> |
|----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------------|

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| 2. A. pesticide | B. influence | C. invention | D. violence |
| 3. A. energy | B. influence | C. animal | D. employment |
| 4. A. pollution | B. depletion | C. property | D. confusion |
| 5. A. advantage | B. editor | C. solution | D. pollutant |

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- Yesterday, Laura _____ him to put some shelves up.
A. asked B. is asking C. ask D. was asked
- Tom has _____ this story wasn't completely true.
A. admitting that B. was admitted that C. admitted that D. admit that
- When I rang Tessa some time last week, she said she was busy _____ day.
A. that B. the C. then D. this
- I wonder _____ the tickets are on sale yet.
A. what B. when C. where D. whether
- Mathew _____ Emma that her train was about to leave.
A. has reminded B. has reminded that C. reminded D. reminded that
- Hello, Jim. I didn't expect to see you today. Sophie said you _____ ill.
A. are B. were C. was D. should be
- Ann _____ and left.
A. said goodbye to me B. says goodbye to me C. tell me goodbye D. told me goodbye
- I told you _____ to switch off the computer, didn't I?
A. don't B. not C. not to D. to not
- Bill was slow, so I _____ hurry up.
A. tell him B. told him for C. told to D. told him to
- Sarah was driving too fast, so I _____ to slow down.
A. asked her B. asked C. ask D. have asked her
- You should use electric fans instead of air conditioners _____ they don't emit dangerous gases.
A. so B. but C. because D. although
- Kevin told Phong _____ for many years.
A. plastic had been popular material for containers
B. plastic would be popular material for containers
C. plastic has been popular material for containers

D. plastic was popular material for containers

13. Kevin told Phong, _____ to our environment in several ways.

A. plastic may be very harmful

B. plastic had been very harmful

C. plastic is too harmful

D. plastic was very harmful

14. He _____ we could buy or make reusable bags and leave some bags in our bike for shopping.

A. said us

B. says to us

C. told us

D. told to us

15. My mother encouraged me _____ for recycling.

A. to collect

B. collecting

C. collect

D. should collect

16. The campaign _____ things like water bottles and aluminum cans into new, useful objects like park benches, bikes, etc.

A. becomes

B. recycles

C. turns

D. comes

17. Fish and poultry have a much lower impact _____ the environment, and other plant proteins are even less damaging _____ the planet.

A. on - to

B. on - with

C. x - for

D. of - to

18. We get the energy we require for our everyday needs from many sources, but not all of them are _____.

A. ecological

B. economic

C. unharmed

D. eco-friendly

19. Burning garbage _____ dangerous gases to the environment, and this may lead to global warming.

A. emits

B. throws

C. sends

D. rejects

20. Individually wrapped candy or chocolate causes a lot of trash, _____ fruits and vegetables are healthier and mean less waste.

A. because

B. while

C. so

D. as

IV. Choose the correct words in the bracket to complete the sentences.

protection

depletion

pollution

erosion

destruction

deforestation

consumption

contamination

1. The _____ **consumption** _____ of fossil fuels has gradually increased in many countries which is concern for many environmentalists.

2. The increase in cases of skin cancer has been recorded in parallel with ozone layer _____ **depletion** ____.

3. Intensive pesticide and fertilizer spays used in agriculture have resulted in the serious _____ **pollution** _____

of water, soil and air.

4. The ___ **contamination** ___ of this river has been proved by scientists to be caused by the dumping of untreated sewage.
5. Scientists are able to explain the consequences of habitat ___ **destruction** ___ now.
6. Every year about 15,000 acres of fertile topsoil are washed away in Haiti, which has resulted in massive soil ____ **erosion** ____.
7. The ___ **protection** ___ of the environment from threats such as deforestation, the extinction of rare species, pollution and natural resource depletion is one of the WWF's missions.
8. The ___ **deforestation** ___ caused during the 20th century made the vegetation in this region, which has originally a vast forest refuge for innumerable species, disappear.

V. Complete the sentences using the correct words in brackets.

1. The energy **consume** / **consumption** of the community has increased since the new resort was built.
2. Over - exploitation of oil will lead to the **depletion** / **deplete** of this natural resources.
3. **Aware** / **Awareness** of environmental preservation should be raised in the public as well as in education.
4. We should **protection** / **protect** the limited or non-renewable natural resources for our future generations.
5. Water is one of the limited natural resources which can run out soon. All efforts should be made to **preserve** / **preservation** it.
6. Disposal of solid waste into the local river has been the cause of water **pollute** / **pollution** in this area.

VI. Choose the word in the box to complete the text.

aquatic	accumulated	catchment	pollutants	sustain
containing	discharged	rubbish	channels	insecticides

RIVER POLLUTION

River pollution occurs when (1) ___ **pollutants** ___ are not removed from sewage and are discharged into the river. River water is a very important source of freshwater required to (2) ___ **sustain** ___ life. We need a constant supply of fresh water for drinking, cooking and washing. Animals living near the river, as well as fishes and (3) ___ **aquatic** ___ plants, also depend on clean river water.

When heavy rainfall occurs, pollutants (4) ___ **accumulated** ___ within the boundaries of the (5) ___ **catchment** ___ area may be washed into river (6) ___ **channels** ___. These pollutants include a variety of agrochemicals like fertilizers and (7) ___ **insecticides** ___.

Waste water (8) _____ **containing** _____ cleaning detergents, oil and other pollutants like industrial waste may be (9) _____ **discharged** _____ into the river channel through our drainage systems. Industrial waste may contain sulfur, resulting increasing the acidity of the river water. Sometimes, (10) _____ **rubbish** _____ such as plastic bags and bottles, are washed into the river channel.

VII. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

There are many ways that (1) _____ helps the environment, and even the smallest step can have significant results.

The environmental problem of (2) _____ is a difficult issue to fix. As more waste is put into landfills, the bigger the problem gets. Wastes that are not biodegradable or are slow to decompose can (3) _____ in landfill sites for centuries, often emitting gases that could be harmful to the environment. Keeping paper out of landfills is just one way that recycling helps the environment.

Recycling items often uses less energy than manufacturing products from natural sources. Making paper that is using recycled pulp, (4) _____, is much less energy intensive than using new wood. While there are benefits to growing trees because of the carbon dioxide that they consume, it will be the damage (5) _____ is done to the environment by putting paper in landfills and using energy to produce new items.

Waste in landfills emit gases as it rots. This can pollute the environment. Anyone who has passed a landfill site (6) _____ hot weather will be familiar with the unpleasant smell and flies that can be found near a landfill site. Reducing the items in landfills will help to (7) _____ the pollution that it causes. Recycling wastes also typically emits less carbon dioxide and carbon monoxide, thus reducing the carbon footprint of a product.

(8) _____ benefit of recycling is that there is often a significant cost saving to be made when using recycle goods. Recycling leaves and grass, for instance, is a great way to make compost. (9) _____ homemade compost is obviously a lot cheaper than buying compost and this is a useful way to save money. Saving money through recycling ultimately helps the environment.

Recycling is just one of many ways that we can help the environment. Every step that we take, however small, is one more towards helping and supporting the environment in which we live. Getting everyone involved, from children to adults, can help produce a better environment for many (10) _____ to come.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|
| 1. A. recycling | B. extinction | C. disappearance | D. discharge |
| 2. A. hills | B. mountain | C. landfills | D. landscapes |
| 3. A. remain | B. effect | C. cause | D. attack |

- | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 4. A. so | B. but | C. although | D. for instance |
| 5. A. who | B. which | C. that | D. x |
| 6. A. most | B. during | C. almost | D. nearly |
| 7. A. last | B. reduce | C. increase | D. stretch |
| 8. A. Others | B. Other | C. Another | D. Further |
| 9. A. Using | B. Recycled | C. Concluded | D. Made |
| 10. A. houses | B. generations | C. places | D. trees |

VIII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

HOW TO STOP WATER POLLUTION

Water pollution is one of the biggest threats to the environment today. There are several sources of water pollution ranging from sewage and fertilizers to soil erosion. The impact of water pollution on wildlife and their natural habitats can be immense. There are also a number of things that the average person can do to help stop water pollution.

We should conserve the soil because soil conservation influences water pollution through erosion. As soil is eroded by water, it transfers sediment from the land to the body of water, which is polluted by the chemicals in the sediment. Phosphorus and industrial chemicals can be pulled into water through soil erosion. When phosphorus levels in water become too high, they can lead to algae blooms that can cause massive fish deaths and make water unsafe for human use. The best way to prevent soil erosion is to keep the banks of rivers well-covered with plants or trees. Planting trees can have a significantly positive impact on the reduction in soil erosion.

The oil used to lubricate engines in all types of machines needs to be changed regularly. When the oil is changed, it presents a number of environmental hazards if not disposed of properly. When a leaky engine releases this oil into the street, it runs to the sewer and makes its way into waterways.

Wherever you see a lot of human recreation, you will almost always see lots of evidence of human use. Wrappers, bottles and other trash are unfortunately a common site at many well-used beaches and rivers around the world. It should be fairly obvious that the trash from these places often ends up in waterways and can cause pollution. Plastics are an especially big issue when it comes to water contamination at beaches and waterways. Picking up litter wherever you find it is honestly the best, fastest way to do your part to stop this type of water pollution.

Organize cleaning parties with local people to make the reach larger. Get businesses involved as sponsors who will donate prizes to the person who collects the most trash if you're having a hard time finding people to sign up to help.

It is estimated that the consumption of plastic by humans is between 250 and 300 million tons a year. About 80% of the plastic in the oceans came from the land. Using alternatives to plastics or using “less disposable” plastics whenever possible can have a surprising impact on ocean pollution. The fact that plastic is cheap and useful for different purposes makes it obvious choices for many people.

1. Lubricants can cause environmental hazards when _____.
A. they may be found in the streets
B. they engines work perfectly
C. they are not disposed properly
D. they are changed regularly
2. The following are the effects of water pollution EXCEPT that _____.
A. it may make water unsafe for human use
B. it may spoil the beauty of beaches or waterways
C. it may cause massive fish deaths due to algae blooms
D. it may keep the banks of rivers well-covered with trees
3. Soil erosion can lead to water pollution because _____.
A. massive fish deaths will make the rivers unsafe for human use
B. soil can be eroded by rain water
C. soil erosion can occur naturally everywhere
D. chemicals in the sediment from the soil erosion will pollute water
4. In order to make beaches clean and green, we should _____.
A. follow the trash from these places which often ends up in waterways
B. find places with a lot of human recreation and of evidence of human use
C. organize campaigns in which prizes will be given to the business who collects the most trash
D. ask local people to take part in cleaning up the beaches, maybe with the sponsor from businesses
5. We can infer from the passage that _____.
A. using too much plastic can cause bad effects on ocean pollution
B. using plastics only causes ocean pollution
C. we don't know how to stop water pollution
D. alternatives to plastics or “less disposable” plastics can make the situation worse

Unit 10. ECOTOURISM - KEY

PART 1: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

adapt	(v)	làm thích ứng, làm thích nghi
biosphere reserve	(n)	khu dự trữ sinh quyển
discharge	(v)	thải ra, xả ra
eco-friendly	(adj)	thân thiện với môi trường
ecology	(n)	hệ sinh thái
ecotourism	(n)	du lịch sinh thái
entertain	(v)	tiếp đãi, giải trí
exotic	(adj)	từ nước ngoài đưa vào; ngoại lai; đẹp kì lạ
fauna	(n)	hệ động vật
flora	(n)	hệ thực vật
impact	(n)	ảnh hưởng
sustainable	(adj)	không gây hại cho môi trường; bền vững
tour guide	(n)	hướng dẫn viên du lịch

B. GRAMMAR REVIEW

I. CONDITIONALS

1. Type 0: Câu điều kiện diễn tả thói quen hoặc một sự thật hiển nhiên.

a. Habit (Thói quen)

If + simple present tense ..., + simple present tense ...

Ex: I usually walk to school if I have enough time.

b. Command (Mệnh Lệnh)

If + simple present tense ..., + command form of verb + ...

Ex: If you go to the Post Office, mail this letter for me.

Please call me if you hear anything from Jane.

2. Type 1: FUTURE POSSIBLE: Diễn tả một khả năng có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai

If S + V (simple present), S + will/shall + V (nguyên thể)

Ex: If I have time, I will go.

3. Type 2: PRESENT UNREAL: Diễn tả tình huống không có thật ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai

If + S + V(past subjunctive/ simple past), S + would/ could/ might + V

Ex: I don't win a lot of money, so I can't spend most of it travelling round the world.

→ If I won a lot of money, I could spend most of it travelling round the world.

4. Type 3: PAST UNREAL: Diễn tả tình huống không có thật ở quá khứ

If + S + had + Vp2, S + would/ could/ might + have + Vp2

Ex: I didn't tell her any good news because I wasn't here early.

→ *If I had been here earlier, I would have told her some good news.*

5. Type 4: Câu điều kiện pha trộn:

Form 1: Type 3 và Type 2

If + S + had + Vp2, S + would/ could/ might + V

Ex: He isn't a rich man now because he didn't take my advice.

→ *If he had taken my advice, he would be a rich man now.*

Form 2: Type 2 và Type 3

If + S + V(past subjunctive/ simple past), S + would/ could/ might + have + Vp2

Ex: If I were him, I wouldn't have got married to her.

PART 2: EXERCISES

A. PHONETICS

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>we</u> ather | B. <u>hea</u> rtly | C. <u>mea</u> dow | D. <u>bre</u> ath |
| 2. A. <u>pu</u> blic | B. <u>scu</u> ba-diving | C. <u>u</u> nderstand | D. <u>c</u> ulture |
| 3. A. <u>ru</u> in | B. <u>fru</u> it | C. <u>cr</u> uise | D. <u>ju</u> ice |
| 4. A. <u>rel</u> ax | B. <u>nat</u> ural | C. <u>saf</u> ari | D. <u>ca</u> mping |
| 5. A. <u>bio</u> logy | B. <u>bio</u> sphere | C. <u>bio</u> diversity | D. <u>bio</u> gas |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. ecology | B. minority | C. historical | D. <u>fav</u> ourable |
| 2. A. <u>en</u> ergy | B. destination | C. understanding | D. degradation |
| 3. A. <u>en</u> vironment | B. eco-friendly | C. inorganic | D. vegetation |
| 4. A. ecology | B. <u>scu</u> ba-diving | C. sustainable | D. phenomenon |
| 5. A. adventurous | B. <u>hab</u> itat | C. sustainable | D. traditional |
| 6. A. preservation | B. <u>equ</u> ality | C. economic | D. entertainment |

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Complete the sentences with a suitable word in the box.

recognized	stalactites	diversity	biodiversity
ecotourism	conservation	awareness	productive

1. The Central Highlands is also highly appreciated thanks to its high biological _____ **diversity** _____.
2. The Bach Ma area has long been famous for its rich _____ **biodiversity** _____, and plant species richness within Bach Ma National Park is still high.
3. Son Doong Cave has been _____ **recognized** _____ as the largest natural cave in the world.
4. Phong Nha Cave has the longest underground river, the highest and longest cave, broadest and most beautiful fine sand beaches inside the caves, the most spectacular stalagmites and _____ **stalactites** _____.
5. Ecotourism is a form of travel that seeks to improve environmental _____ **awareness** _____, foster cultural respect, and benefit the economic development of local communities.
6. The Mekong Delta is one of the world's largest and most _____ **productive** _____ inland fisheries.
7. The most typical _____ **ecotourism** _____ activities are visits and studies in some national parks, adventurous activities in the mountain areas, and community-based ecotourism activities in the mountainous areas.
8. Researchers consider Phong Nha - Ke Bang to be of particular importance for bird _____ **conservation** _____.

II. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form.

1. The birds (be) ___ **will be** ___ scared and (fly) ___ **fly** ___ away if the birdwatchers (make) ___ **make** ___ loud noises.
2. I (take) ___ **will take** ___ the laptop back to the shop if you (not know) ___ **don't know** ___ how to fix it.
3. John and Ann (feel) ___ **will feel** ___ disappointed if nobody (come) ___ **comes** ___ to their party.
4. If I (need) ___ **need** ___ money to buy a dictionary, you (lend) ___ **will you lend** ___ me some?
5. I (be) ___ **will be** ___ surprised if you (fail) ___ **fail** ___ the exam. You're working so hard.
6. We (help) ___ **will help** ___ you to do the housework if we (have) ___ **have** ___ time.
7. If you (throw) ___ **throw** ___ plastic bags into the sea, the fish (eat) ___ **may eat** ___ them and (die) ___ **die** ___.
8. You (cause) ___ **will cause** ___ a forest fire if you (make) ___ **make** ___ a campfire and then (leave) ___ **leave** ___ it unattended.

III. Choose the correct word or phrasal to complete the sentences.

1. My parents might be sad if I **fail/ will fail** the exam.

2. If it doesn't rain, we **would eat/ will eat** in the garden.
3. You **get/ will get** a discount if you pay for the trip in advance.
4. We **will not go/ go** to school on time if the bus is late again.
5. I'm sure he **calls/ will call** you if he doesn't see you at the party.
6. If Alice **leaf/ leaves** for Ha Noi at 3 o'clock, she'll be there by 10.30.
7. You **went/ can go** out with your friends if you finish your homework before 7 o'clock.
8. If you **pay/ will pay** for an ecotour, part of your money will be used for wildlife protection.

IV. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses.

1. If I had a typewriter I **would type** (type) it myself.
2. If I **knew** (know) his address I'd give it to you.
3. He **would look** (look) a lot better if he shaved more often.
4. If you **played** (play) for lower stakes you wouldn't lose so much.
5. If he worked more slowly he **wouldn't make** (not make) so many mistakes.
6. I shouldn't drink that wine if I **were** (be) you.
7. More tourists would come to this country if it **had** (have) a better climate.
8. If I were sent to prison you **would you visit** (visit) me?
9. If someone **gave** (give) you a helicopter what would you do with it?
10. I **would buy** (buy) shares in that company if I had some money.

V. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses.

1. If I had known that you were in hospital I **would have visited** (visit) you.
2. The ground was very soft. But for that, my horse **would have won** (win).
3. If you **had arrived** (arrive) ten minutes earlier you would have got a seat.
4. You would have seen my garden at its best if you **had been** (be) here last week.
5. But for his quickness I **would have been** (be) killed.
6. I shouldn't have believed it if I **hadn't seen** (not see) it with my own eyes.
7. If he had slipped, he **would have fallen** (fall) 500 metres.
8. If he had asked you, you **would you have accepted** (accept)?
9. If I **had had** (had) a map I would have been all right.
10. If I **had known** - (know) that you were coming I'd have baked a cake.

VI. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

1. The southeast area of Viet Nam has typical ecological systems with Cat Tien, Con Dao National Park, Can Gio Biosphere Reserve, which are characterized by high biological diversity. ECOLOGY
2. Bac Lieu Bird Sanctuary Nature Reserve is a coastal rich and diversified salt forest floor with the natural salt-marsh ecosystem. DIVERSE
3. The wonder of Cao Son Eco-Lodge in Lao Cai is inspirational with mild weather, authentic culture of local hill tribes and spectacular landscapes. INSPIRE
4. The limestone forest ecosystem at Phong Nha - Ke Bang support a high diversity of plant and animal species, and it is of the greatest conservation significance. CONSERVE
SIGNIFICANCE
5. At an altitude of 178 meters, Ba Be is the only significant natural mountain lake in Viet Nam. HABITANT
6. Ba Be Lake is unique among Vietnamese protected areas for the diversity of freshwater habitats. DOMINATION
7. The vegetation of Cuc Phuong National Park is dominated by limestone forest. SUPPORTIVE
8. Cuc Phuong National Park supports populations of several mammal species of conservation importance.

VII. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. "Would you mind if we _____ you by your first name?" - "Not at all. Please call me Tom."
A. called B. call C. calling D. want to call
2. She can't get home _____ she has no money.
A. unless B. if C. until D. without
3. If I had known your new address, we _____ to see you.
A. came B. will come C. would come D. would have come
4. If we took the 10:30 train, _____ too early.
A. we would arrive B. we should arrive C. we will arrive D. we may arrive
5. It's very crowded here. I wish there _____ so many people.
A. aren't B. weren't C. haven't been D. isn't
6. I wouldn't go there at night if I _____ you
A. am B. was C. were D. had been
7. If I _____ get a rode, I'll go fishing.

- A. can B. could C. may D. might
8. If they had enough time, they ____ head south.
A. will B. can C. must **D. might**
9. If you ____ a choice, which country would you visit?
A. have **B. had** C. have had D. will have
10. Trees won't grow ____ there is enough water.
A. if B. when **C. unless** D. as
11. I have a test to take tomorrow morning. If I ____ free time, I ____ to Cuc Phuong National Park with you.
A. had - would go B. will have - will go C. have - will go D. had - went
12. Phong Nha Cave has been regarded by the British Cave Research Association as the top cave in the world ____ its four top records.
A. despite B. with **C. due to** D. because
13. ____ the decisive assistance of the villagers, we would not be able to facilitate the ecotour.
A. But B. Neither C. With **D. Without**
14. According to the weather forecast, it will be fine at the weekend. If the weather ____ fine, we ____ on camping at the weekend.
A. were - would go B. was - went **C. is - will go** D. will be - go
15. After lunch, we take a short talk to the elephant camp ____ you will enjoy an exciting elephant riding.
A. where B. what C. that D. when
16. You can climb up Mount McKinley, the highest peak in North America, to explore the rest of Denali National Park in Alaska, and view some ____ wildlife.
A. interested **B. spectacular** C. excited D. great
17. The vast wilderness of Alaska offers some unbelievable ecotourism opportunities, and one of the most ____ tourism industries in the USA.
A. sustainable B. natural C. safe D. environmental
18. Villagers can compete against the commercial fishing and timber companies who ____ the natural resources of the area, taking as much as they want.
A. deplete B. lower C. leave D. decrease
19. The Mekong Delta is an extraordinary place that ____ international tourists.
A. offers B. considers **C. attracts** D. persuades
20. The areas are very ____ for tourists who love to study and discover.

A. suitable

B. available

C. successful

D. aware

C. READING

I. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only one word in each space.

working

middle

clouds

away

recognized

include

amazing

attractive

create

destination

Depart from Ha Noi and head for Highland of Ha Giang, it would be a long but fantastic trip. It is the zigzag mountain path that will make your journey unforgettable.

Meo Vac is exactly the next (1) **destination** that will take your breath (2) **away**. You will totally be in the feeling of adventure, feeling of peace and feeling of full discovery. Starting your way of exploration, Meo Vac is the right place for you to check out some of 23 minority groups in Ha Giang, which (3) **include** Hmong, Tay, Nung tribes. The Nho Que River seems to be so tiny among big mountains. You can see here and there the locals in their colorful dresses, (4) **working** on the terraced fields.

Making the way north, you will arrive in Dong Van. The minibus creeps in the layers of (5) **clouds** again, overwhelming you with loads of beautiful sceneries. Passing Heaven's Gate, Rock Plateau, which was (6) **recognized** by the UNESCO as a geological park, seems to appear before your eyes like a masterpiece of nature. Like other sites in Ha Giang, Dong Van is (7) **attractive** all year around, particularly, on Lunar New Year holiday when various cultures of minority groups are strongly and widely exposed. Besides, you will be able to witness the brilliant yellow paddy fields around August and September, which is in the (8) **middle** of the harvest season.

Up to Lung Cu, the (9) **amazing** beauty of rocky area will continue to captivate your soul. The Highest Flagpole of the North Viet Nam, Old Palace of Hmong King, Pho Bang Old Town are of your good choices here. They (10) **create** the harmony between culture and history of the highland. Let's join in the local market, and we guarantee that you will have what you are looking for!

II. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Come "fly" over the Rainforest - We'll take your breath away!

Located in Cairns, Australia, Rainforest Flyway is a world leader in (1) _____. We take our guests on a breathtaking "flight over rainforest trees and straight into the heart of the rainforest for an unforgettable experience.

On the Flyway, you'll experience over 7.5 kilometers of living rainforests while learning about this spectacular place. Did you know that Australia's rainforests are home to over 3,000

different plant species? And (2) ____ of the trees here are more than 3,000 years old! After this visit you'll understand why it's so important to (3) ____ the rainforests. And you'll see that environmentally responsible travel can be fun, educational, and breathtaking.

Even if you're a world traveler, you've never experienced anything like the Rainforest Flyway. You'll start your unique journey above the (4) ____, as you “fly” in a comfortable gondola only a few meters above the trees. Sit back and enjoy the extraordinary (5) _____. You will be amazed at the breathtakingly rich and lush foliage. And rest assured, there was no damage done to the rainforest (6) ____ during the construction of your gondola. That's why the development of the Flyway took over 40 months to complete.

Your gondola will bring you down into the rainforest itself, where you follow a path to see, hear, and smell the rainforest environment from the ground. Free tours are available several times a day. (7) ____ guides can point out some unusual plants, provide you with interesting facts about rainforest ecology, and answer your questions.

Your Rainforest Flyway experience lasts 90 minutes and ends in the small town of Kuranda, just 25 kilometers northwest of Cairns. Here, you can continue your eco-tour with a visit to the protected areas that 2,000 tropical butterflies call home. You can also buy (8) ____ arts and crafts made by the people of Kuranda. And if that isn't enough, you can continue on to the (9) ____ reserve located a short 9 kilometers west of Kuranda to see animals from all parts of the world.

Rainforest Flyway has won numerous awards, including *Travel Planet* magazine's "Best Ecotourism Destination” Call or visit us online to make your (10) ____ reservations.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. A. difference | B. range | C. ecotourism | D. quality |
| 2. A. some | B. part | C. type | D. any |
| 3. A. exist | B. accommodate | C. store | D. preserve |
| 4. A. flood | B. rainforest | C. forest | D. jungle |
| 5. A. appearance | B. scenery | C. photo | D. present |
| 6. A. ecology | B. biology | C. geography | D. ecotourism |
| 7. A. Tourism | B. Tour | C. Tourist | D. Touring |
| 8. A. beneficial | B. right | C. original | D. negative |
| 9. A. ecology | B. ecotour | C. ecotourist | D. wildlife |
| 10. A. protections | B. reservations | C. guides | D. organizations |

D. WRITING

I. Rewrite the conditional sentences for the following situations.

1. Phong doesn't have enough money so he can't travel abroad.

If Phong had enough money, he could travel abroad.

2. I don't drive too close to the animals on safari. They don't get scared.

If I drove too close to the animals on safari, they would get scared.

3. Tom doesn't have a passport. He can't travel abroad.

If Tom had a passport, he would travel abroad.

4. There are so many tourists visiting the national parks. The environment there is badly damaged.

If there weren't so many tourists visiting the national parks, the environment there would not be badly damaged.

5. Tourists throw litter in the river. The water is polluted.

If tourists didn't throw litter in the river, the water would not be polluted.

6. I can't swim, so I'm not going scuba - diving with you.

If I could swim, I would go scuba - diving with you.

7. I want to go on an eco-tour to Phu Quoc National Park, but I don't have any holiday.

If I had any holiday left, I would go on an eco-tour to Phu Quoc National Park.

8. These students do not work hard. They can't pass the exam.

If these students work hard, they would pass the exam.

II. Rewrite the conditional sentences for the following situations.

1. Hoa's got so much homework that she can't go out with her friends tonight.

If Hoa didn't have so much homework, she would go out with her friends tonight.

2. Sue doesn't have Tony's email address. She can't send him a message.

If Sue had Tony's email address, she could send him a message.

3. I could make a cake for you, but there aren't any eggs in the fridge now.

If there were eggs in the fridge now, I would make a cake for you.

4. Nancy doesn't live near the park. She can't go running there every morning.

If Nancy lived near the park, she would go running there every morning.

5. Nam can't swim. He is not allowed to go to the swimming pool alone.

If Nam could swim, he would go to the swimming pool alone.

6. I can't go to the concert because I have a lot of homework to do.

If I didn't have too much homework to do, I could go to the concert.

7. Nam doesn't have a camera, so he can't take pictures of his trip.

If Nam had a camera, he could take pictures of his trip.

PART 3: TEST YOURSELF

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>con</u> serve | B. pre <u>s</u> erve | C. re <u>s</u> erve | D. de <u>s</u> ert |
| 2. A. m <u>i</u> le | B. mil <u>i</u> tant | C. sm <u>i</u> le | D. k <u>i</u> nd |
| 3. A. p <u>e</u> ace | B. gr <u>e</u> at | C. tr <u>e</u> at | D. m <u>e</u> at |
| 4. A. de <u>s</u> truction | B. su <u>s</u> tainable | C. statu <u>s</u> | D. natu <u>r</u> e |
| 5. A. d <u>e</u> vise | B. deple <u>t</u> e | C. <u>e</u> xotic | D. cha <u>l</u> lenge |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. activity | B. enjoyable | C. economy | D. <u>diff</u> iculty |
| 2. A. environment | B. ecology | C. <u>int</u> ervention | D. community |
| 3. A. Vietnamese | B. contribution | C. conservation | D. <u>con</u> centrate |
| 4. A. alternative | B. competitive | C. conservative | D. <u>in</u> expensive |
| 5. A. economical | B. ecological | C. <u>env</u> ironmental | D. unavoidable |
| 6. A. eliminate | B. <u>con</u> centration | C. eventually | D. inhabitant |

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. ____ she agreed, you would have done it.
A. If B. Had C. Should D. Would
2. If you ____ to be chosen for the job, you'll have to be experienced in the field.
A. want B. wanted C. had wanted D. wants
3. If the doctor had arrived sooner, the boy ____ saved.
A. might be B. have been C. was D. might have been
4. If there ____ enough water, the rice fields could have been more productive.
A. had been B. were C. would be D. are
5. The patient could not recover unless he ____ an operation. [undergo: pass through]
A. had undergone B. would undergo C. underwent D. was undergoing
6. If she ____ him, she would be very happy.
A. met B. will meet C. is meeting D. should meet
7. If he ____ a thorough knowledge of English, he could have applied for this post.
A. had had B. had C. has D. has had
8. If I had enough money, I ____ abroad to improve my English.
A. will go B. would go C. should go D. should have to go
9. If it ____ convenient, let's go out for a drink tonight.
A. be B. is C. was D. were

10. If you ____ time, please write to me.

A. have

B. had

C. have had

D. has

11. The gardens and islets near the Tien and Hau River are very attractive ecotourism ____ of the region.

A. views

B. scenes

C. sights

D. destinations

12. The show Captain Bob's Adventure Children is available now. If children of all ages ____ it, they ____ part in an airboat ride and an interactive reptile show.

A. enjoyed - would take

B. enjoyed – took

C. enjoy - will take

D.

enjoys – take

13. If you ____ to Pak Ou Caves in Laos, you ____ thousands of Buddha images and statues which have been deposited here over centuries.

A. went - saw

B. would go-saw

C. go - see

D. go - will see

14. Local people can't see the benefits of ecotourism in their region. If ecotourism ____ their lives by creating new job opportunities, they ____ a more active role in the conservation.

A. improved - would play

B. improved - played

C. improves - will play

D.

improves - play

15. If visitors ____ their holiday in Hawaii, they ____ in typical ecotourism activities, such as whale watching, kayaking, surfing, snorkelling, scuba diving, and boating.

A. spent - would participate

B. would spend - would participate

C. spend - participate

D. spend - will participate

16. We can help ____ the environment by using green and sustainable energy sources.

A. waste

B. save

C. keep

D. enjoy

17. Ecotourism ____ are important to the overall sustainable energy sources.

A. drawings

B. designs

C. intentions

D. plans

18. Texas is ____ to a number of eco-tour companies, and plenty of ranches and resorts.

A. home

B. house

C. accommodation

D. building

19. Seattle is one of the most ____ cities in the US.

A. ecosystem

B. eco-friendly

C. ecology

D. ecological

20. In Alaska, the ecotourism operators are designed to help minimise tourism ____, which may be more difficult to control as an independent traveler.

A. result

B. impact

C. action

D. power

IV. Complete the sentences with a suitable word in the box.

camping

sustainable

environmental

ecotourism

ecological

destinations

1. I am very much interested learning more about _____ **ecotourism** _____ and its benefits.
2. Cutting down trees or hunting wild animals may upset the _____ **ecological** _____ balance of an area.
3. It was quite relaxing/ interesting to spend a week on a _____ **camping** _____ trip with friends in the open air.
4. A _____ **sustainable** _____ forest is a forest where trees that are cut are replanted and the wildlife is protected.
5. Mass tourism may cause _____ **environmental** _____ problems such as pollution, water shortages, or an increase of waste.
6. When you take part in an ecotourism, you learn more about the cultural traditions of the local people and the _____ **habitat** _____ of some rare animals
7. Top _____ **destinations** _____ for ecotourism are usually national parks, forests or rural areas.
8. There could be both positive and negative _____ **impacts** _____ of tourism activities on the environment.
9. Water pollution and scuba - diving activities can harm the _____ **ecology** _____ of the coral reefs.
10. We can find lots of different _____ **exotic** _____ flowers at the flower festival this year.

V. Identify the one underlined word or phrase that must be changed to make the sentence correct.

1. If someone came into the store, smile and say, "May I help you?" → **comes**
A B C D
2. If you try these cosmetics, you look five years younger. → **will look**
A B C D
3. If you do not understand what was written in the book, you could ask Mr. Pike. → **can ask**
A B C D
4. I will come to meet Mr. Pike and tell him about your problems if you didn't solve them yourself. → **don't solve**
A B C D
5. Sam will not graduate unless he doesn't pass all the tests. → **if**
A B C D
6. If there isn't enough food, we couldn't continue our journey. → **can't continue**
A B C D

7. Unless you pour oil on water, it will float. → **If**

A

B

C

D

8. You have to take a taxi home if you want to leave now. → **will have to**

A

B

C

D

9. If anyone will phone, tell them I'll be back at 11:00. → **phones**

A

B

C

D

10. We can hire a minibus if there will be enough people. → **there are**

A

B

C

D

VI. Choose the word in the box to complete the text.

positive

diversity

home

flooded

number

features

collected

provides

Although

ecotourism

Located only 40 km from downtown Ho Chi Minh City, Can Gio Mangrove Biosphere Reserve, with great historical and cultural traditions. Can Gio is uniquely valuable for its (1) diversity - 72 mangrove plant species, some of which are rare species listed in the Viet Nam Red List.

Recreational visits to Can Gio started in the mid-1990s as students from the city came to visit the beach and see monkeys on the weekends.

There are three main tourist (2) features in Can Gio. The Forest Park is (3) home to a mischievous 600-member monkeys, a semi-natural crocodile pool, and a historical museum. Visitors enjoy walking under the cool mangrove branches and playing with the monkeys.

The Vam Sat site includes a bat sanctuary in the (4) flooded area and a bird sanctuary containing over 10 species listed in the Red List. Vam Sat (5) provides visitors with basic knowledge of the ecosystem of mangrove fauna, and has therefore attracted a good (6) number of scientists and true eco-tourists.

The April 30th Beach is located in the transition zone near Can Gio Town. (7) Although the long beach is not of high quality, it is near the city and features cheap local seafood.

At the moment and in general, the impact of tourism on the local economy and society is (8) positive. Some local community members have seen their income increase and their living standards improve through employment in beach services. But (9) ecotourism in Can Gio is also having some negative impact on the environment and the community. With the number of visitors increasing rapidly, beach pollution is becoming a problem. Waste is (10)

___ collected ___ each morning, but for the rest of the day, rubbish from food and drink shops are thrown into the beach creating unhygienic conditions.

VII. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

NAM CAT TIEN NATIONAL PARK

In the early morning of the first day, the guide will pick you up and transfer to Nam Cat Tien National Park, located on a low mountainous area of Dong Nai Province. Nam Cat Tien is an area which represents a special ecosystem of wet (1) ___ with biodiversity.

You will take a boat trip along the Dong Nai River to view the (2) ___ on the river banks. You can stop at the grassland area to search for peacocks, jungle fowl and birds that prefer a more open habitat. After that, you can continue to go to Kim Lan Village, once a French military camp and now the main village to the one ethnic (3) ___ of the park.

The song of birds will wake you up in the morning of the second day. You go hiking to the crocodile lake with plenty of (4) ___ to see many varieties of bird life and, if you are lucky, the chance of spotting larger mammals. The Siamese Crocodile is an endangered (5) ___ and this is one of the last remaining places in the world that you can still see them in the wild. In the evening, a walking tour along the track following the river through the botanical garden to Heaven Rapids, which provide you with good opportunities to see the birds and possibly the gibbon.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|------------------|---------------|
| 1. A. places | B. varieties | C. forests | D. area |
| 2. A. change | B. variety | C. diverse | D. wildlife |
| 3. A. inhabitants | B. mammals | C. plants | D. habitats |
| 4. A. occasion | B. notes | C. opportunities | D. advantages |
| 5. A. surfaces | B. layers | C. spots | D. species |

VIII. Choose the best answer.

As most potential ecotourist sites are inhabited by ethnic minorities, the principle of “encouraging community participation in ecotourism activities” should both create income and help maintain cultural identity. These communities have a deep understanding of traditional festivals, cultivation and land use customs, traditional lifestyle and handicrafts, and historical places. A trip to the limestone mountain of Cao Bang - Bac Kan, for example, is valuable not only for the Ba Be Lake, but for the opportunity to learn about cultivation customs, dying practices using endemic plants to produce brocade, and traditional handmade boats of precious timber collected in the forest.

Because ecotourism is important for environmental education, maintenance of indigenous culture, and local economic development, both investment and government encouragement are required.

One research shows that 90 percent of ecotourist guides lack environmental knowledge about the flora, fauna, and natural resources in the area, and 88 percent would benefit from ecotourism guidebooks written especially for them. An illustration of wasted potential caused by this lack of training is Ha Long Bay, a world heritage site with immense environmental value - coral reefs, limestone mountains, thousands of flora and fauna species of high biodiversity, and rich cultural identity. But tourists in Ha Long Bay are presently visiting only the Bay and some caves, not accessing environmental information or local cultural activities. In general, the full potential of ecotourism has not yet been reached.

International visitors to Viet Nam often like to visit ethnic minority villages to observe the culture, meet local people, and participate in traditional activities. The ethnic minorities who live in or near nature reserves maintain **distinctive** lifestyles, cultural identities, and traditional customs. These features are part of the real value of ecotourism. However, local people are not much involved in ecotourism.

In addition, local people still live in poverty, their life closely associates with natural resources. The economic benefits of ecotourism need to be shared with them, but this will not happen without community participation.

1. The word “**distinctive**” in paragraph 4 is closest in meaning to _____.
A. close to nature
B. easily understood
C. clearly different from others
D. staying the same for a long time
2. In order to develop ecotourism, local communities should _____.
A. change their distinctive lifestyles
B. share the economic benefits of ecotourism
C. depend on natural resources
D. take part in all aspects of ecotourism
3. An ecotour to the region of ethnic minorities is very valuable because tourists _____.
A. can understand the aspects of cultures and traditions
B. can make a trip to the limestone mountain of Cao Bang - Bac Kan
C. can learn dying practices using endemic plants to produce brocade
D. can make traditional boats of precious timber collected in the forest
4. Ecotourism can bring all the following benefits EXCEPT _____.
A. establishing more national parks and nature reserves
B. introducing cultures of ethnic minorities to foreign tourists

- C. maintaining cultural identity
 - D. providing opportunities to learn about traditional customs
5. Tourist guides who lack environmental knowledge can't ____.
- A. get ecotourism guidebooks written especially for them
 - B. make ethnic minorities have a deep understanding of their traditional festivals
 - C. make tourists access all environmental information or local cultural activities
 - D. take tourists to Ha Long Bay, a world heritage site with immense environmental value